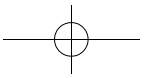


2011 Chevrolet Silverado Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
- Instrument Panel 1-2
- Initial Drive Information 1-8
- Vehicle Features 1-25
- Performance and Maintenance 1-32

Keys, Doors and Windows ... 2-1
- Keys and Locks 2-2
- Doors 2-10
- Vehicle Security 2-12
- Exterior Mirrors 2-15
- Interior Mirrors 2-19
- Windows 2-20
- Roof 2-22

Seats and Restraints 3-1
- Head Restraints 3-2
- Front Seats 3-3
- Rear Seats 3-12
- Safety Belts 3-14
- Airbag System 3-31
- Child Restraints 3-51

Storage 4-1
- Storage Compartments 4-1

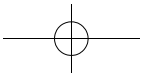
Instruments and Controls 5-1
- Controls 5-2
- Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-12
- Information Displays 5-34
- Vehicle Messages 5-43
- Vehicle Personalization 5-53
- Universal Remote System 5-61

Lighting 6-1
- Exterior Lighting 6-1
- Interior Lighting 6-7
- Lighting Features 6-9

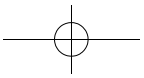
Infotainment System 7-1
- Introduction 7-1
- Radio 7-8
- Audio Players 7-14
- Rear Seat Infotainment 7-38
- Phone 7-49

Climate Controls 8-1
- Climate Control Systems 8-1
- Air Vents 8-11

Driving and Operating 9-1
- Driving Information 9-2
- Starting and Operating 9-32
- Engine Exhaust 9-42
- Automatic Transmission 9-43
- Manual Transmission 9-51
- Drive Systems 9-53
- Brakes 9-67
- Ride Control Systems 9-70
- Cruise Control 9-73
- Object Detection Systems 9-76
- Fuel 9-83
- Towing 9-90
- Conversions and Add-Ons 9-123



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2011 Chevrolet Silverado Owner Manual

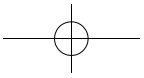
Vehicle Care 10-1
- General Information 10-3
- Vehicle Checks 10-4
- Headlamp Aiming 10-40
- Bulb Replacement 10-43
- Electrical System 10-47
- Wheels and Tires 10-55
- Jump Starting 10-96
- Towing 10-101
- Appearance Care 10-106

Service and Maintenance ... 11-1
- General Information 11-1
- Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
- Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-8
- Maintenance Records 11-12

Technical Data 12-1
- Vehicle Identification 12-1
- Vehicle Data 12-2

Customer Information 13-1
- Customer Information 13-1
- Reporting Safety Defects 13-15
- Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-16

Index i-1



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, SILVERADO, and Z71 are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual.

Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name "General Motors of Canada Limited" for Chevrolet Motor Division wherever it appears in this manual.

If the vehicle has the Duramax® Diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for additional and specific information on this engine.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Vehicle Owners

Propriétaires Canadiens

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
Numéro de poste 6438 de langue française
www.helminc.com

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 25965913 A First Printing

©2010 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

Warning or **Caution** indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Notice: **This means there is something that could result in property or vehicle damage. This would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.**

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means "Do Not," "Do not do this," or "Do not let this happen."

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Adjustable Pedals

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar®

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Tow/Haul Mode

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In Brief

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel (Base/Uplevel Version) 1-2
Instrument Panel (Premium Version) 1-6

Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information 1-8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-8
Remote Vehicle Start 1-9
Door Locks 1-9
Windows 1-10
Seat Adjustment 1-11
Memory Features 1-13
Heated Seats 1-14
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-15
Safety Belt 1-15
Sensing System for Passenger Airbag 1-15
Mirror Adjustment 1-16
Steering Wheel Adjustment 1-17
Throttle and Brake Pedal Adjustment 1-17
Interior Lighting 1-18
Exterior Lighting 1-19
Windshield Wiper/Washer 1-19
Climate Controls 1-20
Transmission 1-22
Four-Wheel Drive 1-23

Vehicle Features

Radio(s) 1-25
Satellite Radio 1-26
Portable Audio Devices 1-27
Bluetooth® 1-27
Steering Wheel Controls 1-27
Navigation System 1-28
Driver Information Center (DIC) 1-28
Cruise Control 1-29
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 1-30
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 1-30
Power Outlets 1-30
Universal Remote System . . . 1-31
Sunroof 1-31

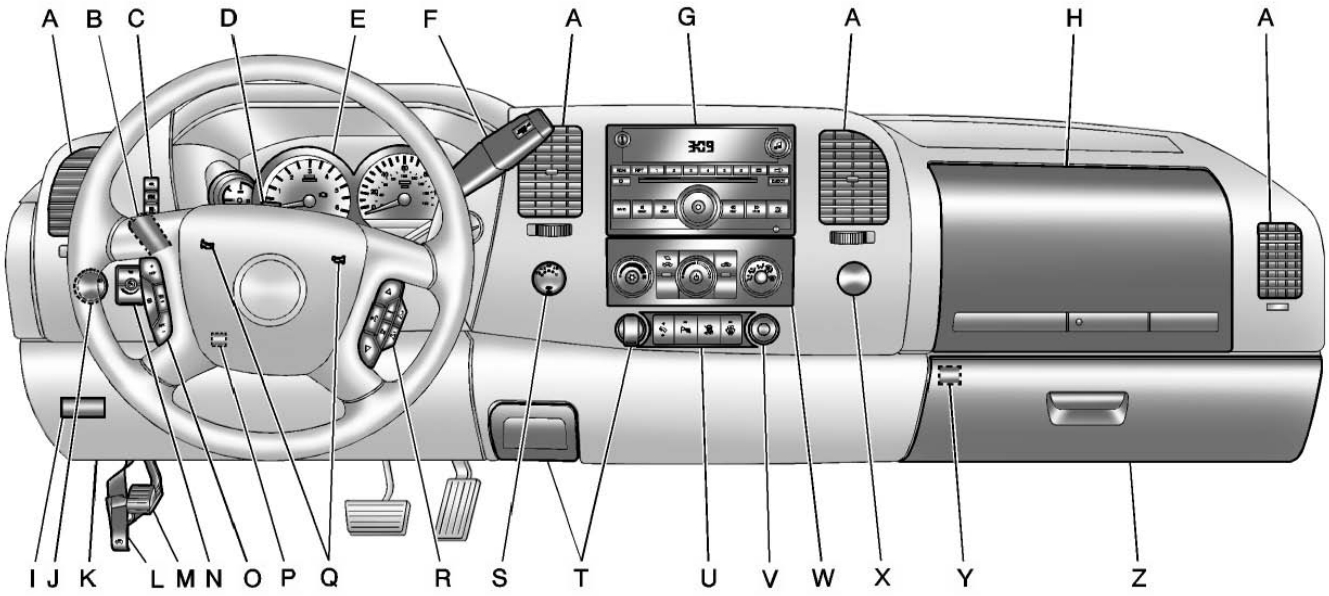
Performance and Maintenance

StabiliTrak® System 1-32
Tire Pressure Monitor 1-33
Engine Oil Life System 1-34
Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) 1-34
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-34
Roadside Assistance Program 1-35
OnStar® 1-35

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel (Base/Uplevel Version)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. *Air Vents on page 8-11*.

B. *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-6*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-5.

C. Driver Information Center (DIC) Buttons. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-5*.

E. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-13*.

F. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-43*.

Tow/Haul Selector Button (If Equipped). See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49*.

Range Selection Mode (Allison Transmission and Hydra-Matic® 6-Speed Button (If Equipped). See *Manual Mode on page 9-47*.

G. *AM-FM Radio on page 7-8*.

H. *Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1*.

I. Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped). See *Trailer Towing on page 9-94*.

J. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

K. Data Link Connector (DLC). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*.

L. *Hood on page 10-5*.

M. *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

N. *Dome Lamps on page 6-8*.

Fog Lamps on page 6-6 (If Equipped).

O. *Cruise Control on page 9-73*.

P. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2*.

Q. *Horn on page 5-5*.

R. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-3* (If Equipped).

S. Automatic Transfer Case Control (If Equipped). See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-32*.

T. Ashtray (If Equipped). See *Ashtrays on page 5-12* and *Cigarette Lighter on page 5-11*.

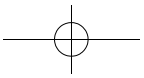
U. *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70* (If Equipped).

Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76 (If Equipped).

Pedal Adjust Button (If Equipped). See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-32*.

Exhaust Brake (If Equipped). See "Brakes" in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1-4 In Brief

V. *Power Outlets on page 5-10*.

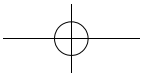
W. *Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning) on page 8-1* or *Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only) on page 8-4* (If Equipped).

Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5 (If Equipped).

X. Power Take Off (PTO) Control (If Equipped). See Power Take Off (PTO) in the Duramax diesel supplement Index.

Y. Passenger Airbag Off Control (If Equipped). See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39*.

Z. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.



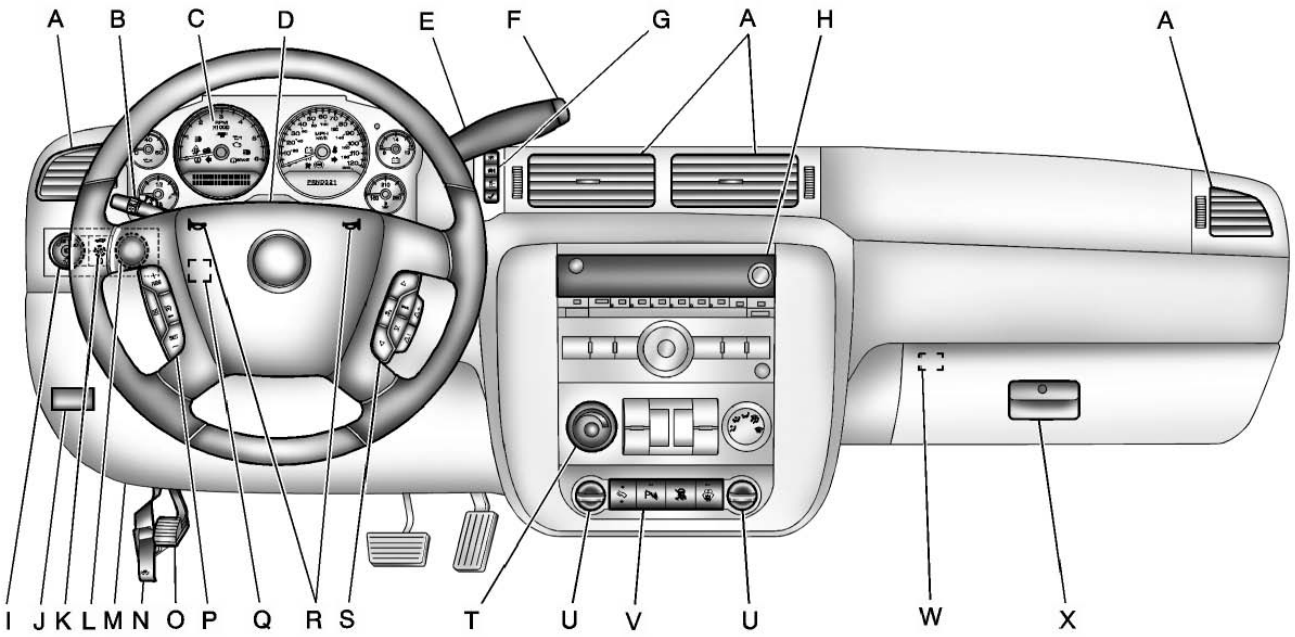
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1-6 In Brief

Instrument Panel (Premium Version)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. *Air Vents on page 8-11*.

B. *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-6*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-5.

C. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-13*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-5*.

E. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-43*.

F. *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49* (If Equipped).

G. Driver Information Center (DIC) Buttons. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

H. *AM-FM Radio on page 7-8*.

I. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

J. Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped). See *Trailer Towing on page 9-94*.

K. *Dome Lamps on page 6-8*.

L. Automatic Transfer Case Control. (If Equipped). See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-32*.

M. Data Link Connector (DLC). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*.

N. *Hood on page 10-5*.

O. *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

P. *Cruise Control on page 9-73*.

Q. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2*.

R. *Horn on page 5-5*.

S. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-3*.

T. *Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning) on page 8-1* or *Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only) on page 8-4* (If equipped).

Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5 (If Equipped).

U. *Power Outlets on page 5-10*.

Cigarette Lighter (If Equipped). See *Ashtrays on page 5-12* and *Cigarette Lighter on page 5-11*.

V. *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70* (If Equipped).

Pedal Adjust Button (If Equipped). See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-32*.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76 (If Equipped).

Exhaust Brake (If Equipped). See "Brakes" in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

W. Passenger Airbag Off Control (If Equipped). See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39*.

X. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter is used to remotely lock and unlock the doors from up to 60 m (195 ft) away from the vehicle.

Press to unlock the driver door. Press again within three seconds to unlock all remaining doors.

Press to lock all doors.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalized.

Press and release to locate the vehicle.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to sound the panic alarm.

Press again to cancel the panic alarm.

See *Keys on page 2-2* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Vehicle Start

With this feature the engine can be started from outside of the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold until the turn signal lamps flash.

When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition on and then back off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-5*.

Door Locks

There are several ways to lock and unlock the vehicle.

From outside, use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the key in the driver door. From inside, use the power door locks or the manual door locks. To lock or unlock the door with the manual locks, push down or pull up on the manual lock knob.

Power Door Locks

If available, these switches are located on the front doors.

: Press to unlock the doors.

: Remove the key from the ignition and press to lock the doors.

For more information, see:

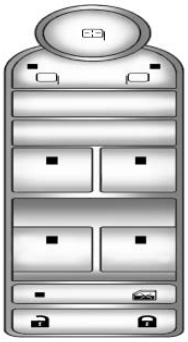
- *Automatic Door Locks on page 2-9*.
- *Safety Locks on page 2-9*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows

Turn the hand crank on each door to manually raise or lower the manual windows.

Power Windows



Crew Cab Shown

If available, the power window switches are located on each of the side doors in the front and rear.

The driver door has a switch for the passenger window and rear windows.

Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

For more information, see:

- *Windows on page 2-20*.
- *Power Windows on page 2-20*.

Power Sliding Rear Window

On vehicles with a power sliding rear window, the switch is located in the overhead console. See *Rear Windows on page 2-21*.

The power sliding rear window cannot be operated manually. Push or pull the switch to open or close the window.

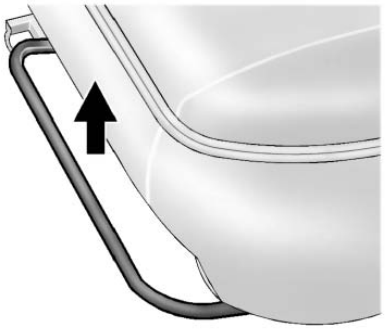
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Adjustment

Front Seats

Manual Seats

On vehicles with a manual seat, it can be moved forward or rearward.



1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

Try to move the seat with your body to be sure the seat is locked in place.

See *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3* for more information.

Power Seats

On vehicles with power seats, the controls are on the outboard side of the front seats.

Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.

Raise or lower the front or rear part of the cushion by moving the front or rear part of the control up or down.

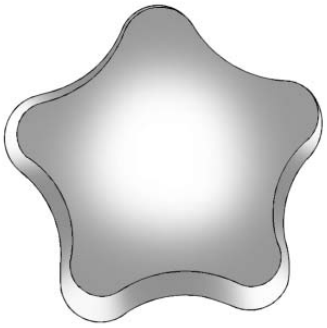
Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1-12 In Brief

Manual Lumbar

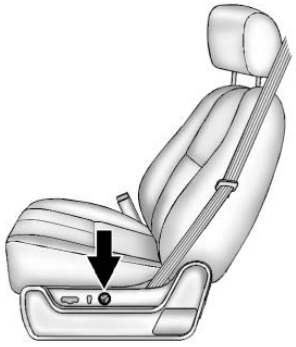


On vehicles with manual lumbar, the knob is on the outboard side of the seat.

Increase or decrease lumbar support by turning the knob forward or rearward.

See *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-7* for more information.

Power Lumbar



On vehicles with power lumbar, the control is on the outboard side of the seat.

On vehicles with two-way lumbar, press and hold the top of the control to increase lumbar support. To decrease, press and hold the bottom of the control.

On vehicles with four-way lumbar, press and hold the front of the control to increase lumbar support. To decrease, press and hold the rear of the control. To raise the height of the support, press and hold the top of the control. To lower, press and hold the bottom of the control.

See *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-7* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

On vehicles with manual reclining seatbacks, the lever is on the outboard side of the seat.

To recline the seatback:

1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-9* for more information.

Power Reclining Seatbacks

On vehicles with power reclining seatbacks, the control is on the outboard side of the seat.

To recline the seatback, tilt the top of the control rearward.

To bring the seatback forward, tilt the top of the control forward.

See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-9* for more information.

Memory Features

On vehicles with the memory feature, the controls on the driver door are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver seat, outside mirrors, and the adjustable throttle and brake pedals, if the vehicle has this feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Memory Positions

To save into memory:

1. Adjust the driver seat and seatback recliner, both outside mirrors, and the throttle and brake pedals, if available.

   See *Power Mirrors on page 2-16* and *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-32* for more information.

   Not all mirrors and adjustable throttles and brake pedals will have the ability to save and recall their positions.
2. Press and hold "1" until two beeps sound.
3. Repeat for a second driver position using "2."

To recall the memory positions, press and release "1" or "2." The vehicle must be in P (Park). A single beep will sound. The seat, outside mirrors, and adjustable throttle and brake pedals, if available, will move to the position previously stored for the identified driver.

See "Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals" under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* and *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Easy Exit Driver Seat

The easy exit driver seat feature can move the seat rearward to allow extra room to exit the vehicle.

: Press to recall the easy exit seat position. The vehicle must be in P (Park).

See "Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals" under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* and *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Heated Seats

On vehicles with heated front seats, the controls are located on the driver and passenger doors.

: Press to heat the seatback only.

: Press to heat the seat and seatback.

The light on the button will come on to indicate that the feature is working. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium, and low and to turn the heat to the seat off. Indicator lights will show the level of heat selected: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-11*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

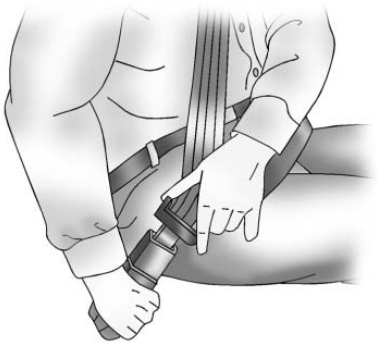
Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

For more information see *Head Restraints on page 3-2* and *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

Safety Belt



Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly.

- *Safety Belts on page 3-14*.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-17*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-23*.
- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59*.

Sensing System for Passenger Airbag

The passenger sensing system, if equipped, turns off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbags, seat-mounted side impact airbags and roof-rail airbags are not affected by this.

If the vehicle has one of the indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position unless there is an airbag off switch located in the glove box.

If there is an airbag off switch, the vehicle does not have a passenger sensing system. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.

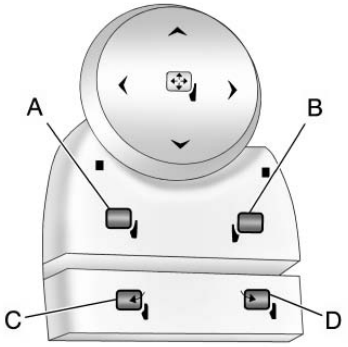
United States

Canada and Mexico

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* for important information.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior Mirrors



Vehicles with outside power mirrors and foldaway mirrors have controls located on the driver door.

1. Press (A) or (B) to select the driver or passenger side mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows located on the control pad to adjust the mirror.
3. Press either (A) or (B) again to deselect the mirror.

See *Manual Mirrors on page 2-16* or *Power Mirrors on page 2-16*.

If the vehicle has towing mirrors, they can be adjusted for a clearer view of the objects behind you. Manually pull out the mirror head to extend it for better visibility when towing a trailer. See *Trailer-Tow Mirrors on page 2-16*.

Power Foldaway Mirrors

To fold the mirrors:

1. Press (C) to fold the mirrors out to the driving position.
2. Press (D) to fold the mirrors in to the folded position.

Manual Foldaway Mirrors

Manually fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, pull the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward, to return to its original position.

See *Folding Mirrors on page 2-17*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

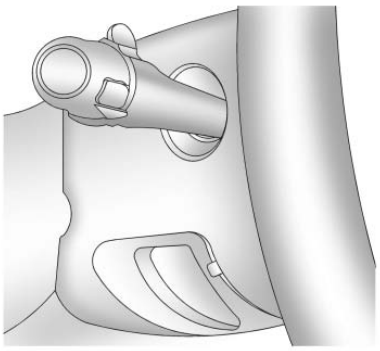
Interior Mirror

Vehicles with a manual rearview mirror can be adjusted to see clearly behind the vehicle. Hold the mirror in the center to move it up or down and side to side. To reduce headlamp glare during nighttime use, pull the tab forward for daytime use and push it for nighttime use.

Vehicles with the automatic dimming feature will automatically reduce the glare of lights from behind the vehicle. The dimming feature comes on and the indicator light illuminates each time the vehicle is started.

See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror on page 2-19* for more information.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



The tilt lever is located on the lower left side of the steering column.

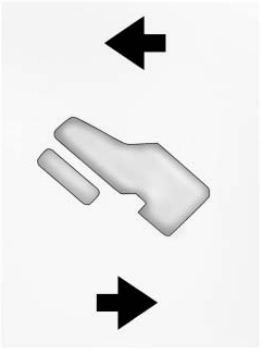
To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Throttle and Brake Pedal Adjustment

On vehicles with this feature, you can change the position of the throttle and brake pedals.



The switch used to adjust the pedals is located on the instrument panel below the climate control system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the arrow at the bottom of the switch to move the pedals closer to your body. Press the arrow at the top of the switch to move the pedals away from your body.

See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-32*.

Interior Lighting

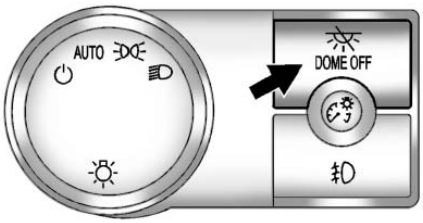
Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened. They turn off after all the doors are closed.

Turn the instrument panel brightness knob clockwise to the farthest position to turn on the dome lamps. The dome lamps remain on until the knob is turned counterclockwise.

Dome Lamp Override

The dome lamp override button is located next to the exterior lamps control.



DOME OFF : Press the button in and the dome lamps remain off when a door is opened. Press the button again to return it to the extended position so that the dome lamps come on when a door is opened.

Reading Lamps

For vehicles with reading lamps in the overhead console, press the button located next to the lamp to turn it on or off.

The vehicle may also have reading lamps in other locations. The lamps cannot be adjusted.

For more information about interior lamps, see:

- *Dome Lamps on page 6-8*.
- *Reading Lamps on page 6-8*.
- *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-7*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exterior Lighting

The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

⏻ : Turns off the automatic headlamps and daytime running lamps (DRL). Turn the headlamp control to the off position again to turn the automatic headlamps or DRL back on.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, the off position will only work when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

AUTO: Automatically turns on the headlamps, parking lamps, taillamps, instrument panel lights, and license plate lamps.

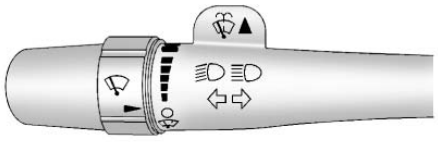
: Turns on the parking lamps, taillamps, instrument panel lights, and license plate lamps.

: Turns on the headlamps, parking lamps, taillamps, instrument panel lights, and license plate lamps.

For more information, see:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
- *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 6-4*.
- *Fog Lamps on page 6-6*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



: Single wipe, turn to , then release. Several wipes, hold the band on longer.

◯ : Turns the windshield wipers off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

: Slow wipes.

: Fast wipes.

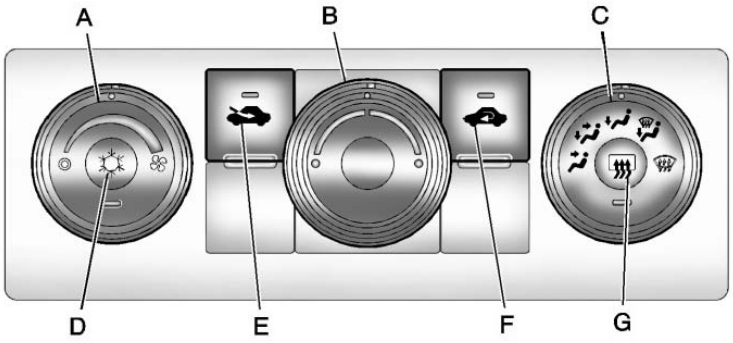
: Push the paddle at the top of the lever to spray washer fluid on the windshield.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-5*.

Climate Controls

These systems control the heating, cooling, and ventilation.

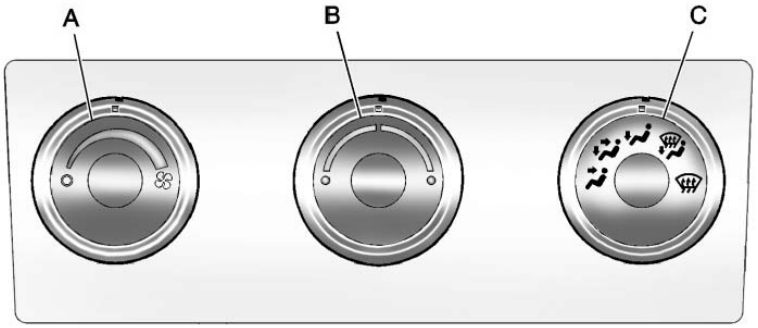
Climate Control System (With Air Conditioning)



A. Fan Control
B. Temperature Control
C. Air Delivery Mode Control
D. Air Conditioning
E. Outside Air
F. Air Recirculation
G. Rear Window Defogger

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System (With Heater Only)

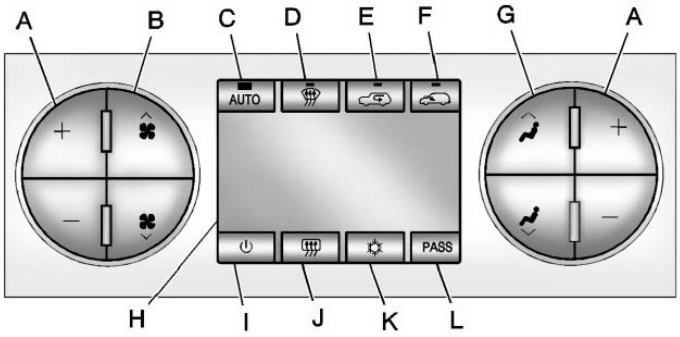


A. Fan Control
B. Temperature Control
C. Air Delivery Mode Control

See *Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning) on page 8-1* or *Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only) on page 8-4*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

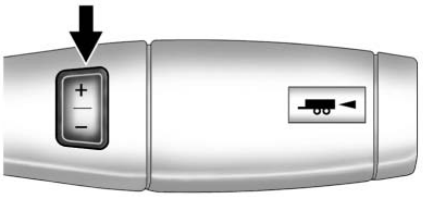


A. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
B. Fan Control
C. AUTO
D. Defrost
E. Air Recirculation
F. Outside Air
G. Air Delivery Mode Control
H. Display
I. Power Button
J. Rear Window Defogger
K. Air Conditioning
L. PASS (Passenger)

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5*.

Transmission

Range Selection Mode



The Range Selection Mode switch, if equipped, is located on the shift lever. To enable the Range Selection feature, move the column shift lever to the M (Manual) position. The current range will appear next to the M. This is the highest attainable range with all lower gears accessible. As an example, when 5 (Fifth) gear is selected, 1 (First) through 5 (Fifth) gears are available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the plus/minus buttons, located on the steering column shift lever, to select the desired range of gears for current driving conditions. See *Manual Mode on page 9-47*.

While using Range Selection Mode, cruise control and the Tow/Haul mode can be used.

Grade Braking is not available when Range Selection Mode is active. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49*.

Four-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle has Four-Wheel Drive, you can send the engine's driving power to all four wheels for extra traction.

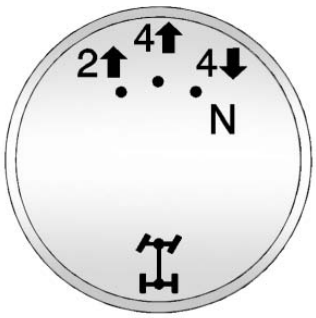
Transfer Case Buttons

The vehicle will have one of these three styles of transfer case controls. Use these controls to shift into and out of the different Four-Wheel Drive modes.

Manual Transfer Case

This transfer case shift lever is on the floor to the right of the driver.

Electronic Transfer Case



This transfer case knob is located next to the steering column.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transfer Case

This transfer case knob is located next to the steering column.

Each transfer case design offers different drive options. The list below described the different drive options that may be available.

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel-Drive High): This setting is used for driving in most street and highway situations.

AUTO (Automatic Four-Wheel Drive): This setting is ideal for use when road surface traction conditions are variable.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel High): Use the Four-Wheel-Drive High position when extra traction is needed, such as on snowy or icy roads or in most off-road situations.

N (Neutral): Shift the transfer case to Neutral only when towing the vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Trailer Towing on page 9-94*.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel-Drive Low): This setting sends maximum power to all four wheels. You might choose Four-Wheel-Drive Low if you are driving off-road in deep sand, deep mud, deep snow, and while climbing or descending steep hills.

See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Features

Radio(s)

Radio with CD, DVD, and USB Port

⏻ : Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

BAND: Press to choose between FM, AM, or XM™, if equipped.

♫ : Select radio stations.

⏮⏭ : Seek or scan stations.

i : Press to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM station; or CD, MP3, or WMA song. If information is available during XM, CD, MP3, or WMA playback, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, “NO INFO” displays.

For more information about these and other radio features, see *Operation on page 7-2*.

For vehicles with a Rear Seat Entertainment System (RSE) and Rear Seat Audio System (RSA), see *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* and *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Radio Stations

A maximum of 36 stations can be stored as favorites using the six softkeys located below the radio station frequency tabs and by using the radio FAV button. Press FAV to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM stations.

For more information, see “Storing Radio Stations” in *AM-FM Radio on page 7-8*.

Setting the Clock

To set the time and date for the radio with CD, DVD, and USB Port:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, then press ⏻, to turn the radio on.
2. Press 🕘 to display HR, MIN, MM, DD, and YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year).
3. Press the softkey located under any one of the labels to be changed.
4. To increase or decrease the time or date, turn ♫ clockwise or counter-clockwise.

For detailed instructions on setting the clock for the vehicle's specific audio system, see *Clock on page 5-8*.

Satellite Radio

XM is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound.

A fee is required to receive the XM service.

For more information, refer to:

- www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 (U.S.)
- www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 (Canada)

See “XM Satellite Radio Service” under *Satellite Radio on page 7-10*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Portable Audio Devices

This vehicle may have an auxiliary input located on the radio faceplate and a USB port located in the center console or on the dashboard. External devices such as an iPod®, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or USB storage device. can be connected to the auxiliary port using a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) input cable or the USB port depending on the audio system.

See “Using the Auxiliary Input Jack” and “Using the USB Port” in *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*.

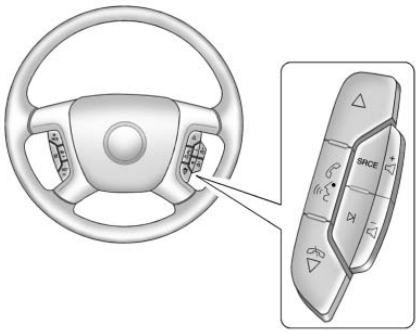
Bluetooth®

For vehicles with a Bluetooth system, it allows users with a Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to make and receive hands-free calls using the vehicle’s audio system and controls.

The Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired with the Bluetooth system before it can be used in the vehicle. Not all phones will support all functions. For more information, visit www.gm.com/bluetooth.

For more information, see *Bluetooth on page 7-49*.

Steering Wheel Controls



For vehicles with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

△ / ▽ : Press to change favorite radio stations, select tracks on a CD/DVD, or to navigate tracks or folders on an iPod® or USB device.

: Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. Press and hold longer than two seconds to interact with OnStar® or Bluetooth systems, if equipped.

+ – : Press to increase or decrease volume.

: Press to reject an incoming call, or to end a call.

SRCE: Press to switch between the radio and CD, and for equipped vehicles, the DVD, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary.

: Press to seek the next radio station, the next track or chapter while sourced to the CD or DVD slot, or to select tracks and folders on an iPod® or USB device.

For more information, see *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation System

The vehicle's navigation system (if equipped) provides detailed maps of most major freeways and roads throughout the United States and Canada. After a destination has been set, the system provides turn-by-turn instructions for reaching the destination. In addition, the system can help locate a variety of points of interest (POI), such as banks, airports, restaurants, and more.

See the Navigation System manual for more information.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is located at the bottom of the instrument panel cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems and enables access to the personalization menu.

The DIC buttons are located on the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel.

Some vehicles do not have the buttons shown, however some of the menus can be viewed by using the trip odometer reset stem.

: Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometer, fuel range, average economy, fuel used, timer, transmission temperature, and instantaneous economy and Active Fuel Management™ indicator. The compass and outside air temperature will also be shown in the display. The temperature will be shown in °C or °F depending on the units selected.

: Press this button to display the oil life, units, tire pressure readings for vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), trailer brake gain and output information for vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, engine hours, compass zone setting, and compass recalibration.

: Press this button to customize the feature settings on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

✓ : Press this button to set or reset certain functions and to turn off or acknowledge messages on the DIC.

For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Customization

Some vehicle features can be programmed by using the DIC buttons next to the steering wheel. These features include:

- Language
- Door Lock and Unlock Settings
- RKE Lock and Unlock Feedback
- Lighting
- Chime Volume
- Memory Features

See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53*.

Cruise Control

The cruise control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

: Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator light is on when cruise control is on and turns off when cruise control is off.

+ RES : Press briefly to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed, or press and hold to accelerate.

SET − : Press to set the speed and activate cruise control or make the vehicle decelerate.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

See *Cruise Control on page 9-73*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The rear vision camera displays a view of the area behind the vehicle when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). This is displayed on the inside rearview mirror or the navigation screen, if equipped.

To clean the camera lens, located in the bezel for the tailgate handle, rinse it with water and wipe it with a soft cloth.

For more information, see *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-78*.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) uses sensors on the rear bumper to detect objects while parking the vehicle. URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse) and operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). URPA uses audio beeps to provide distance and system information.

Keep the sensors on the vehicle's rear bumper clean to ensure proper operation.

The system can be disabled by pressing the rear park aid disable button located next to the radio.

See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76* for more information.

Power Outlets

Accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone, MP3 player, etc.

The vehicle may have two accessory power outlets located below the climate control system, or may have one accessory power outlet and one cigarette lighter. The cigarette lighter is designed to fit only in the receptacle closest to the driver.

There may be another accessory power outlet in the rear cargo area. If the vehicle has a floor console, there is an accessory power outlet inside the storage bin and one on the rear of the floor console.

The accessory power outlets are powered, even when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF. Continuing to use power outlets while the ignition is in LOCK/OFF may cause the vehicle's battery to run down.

See *Power Outlets on page 5-10*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

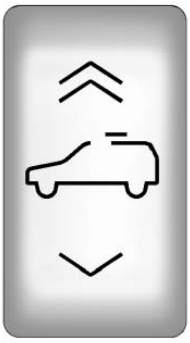
Universal Remote System

The Universal Remote System allows for garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices to be programmed to work with these buttons in the vehicle.

See *Universal Remote System on page 5-61*.

Sunroof

Extended Cab



The sunroof switch is located on the headliner above the rearview mirror.

Vent: From the closed position, press and hold the rear of the switch to vent the sunroof.

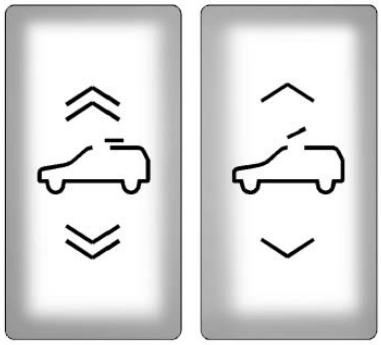
Open: From the vent position, press and hold the rear of the switch to open the sunroof.

Close: Press and hold the front of the switch to close the sunroof.

The sunroof also has a roller sunshade that can be used to block the rays of the sun. To open the sunshade, press and unlatch it, and roll it back. To close, pull it forward and latch it into the closed position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Crew Cab



There are two sunroof switches located in the overhead console above the rearview mirror.

Vent: From the closed position, press the rear of the passenger side switch to vent the sunroof.

Manual-Open/Manual-Close: To open the sunroof, press and hold the rear of the driver side switch until the sunroof reaches the desired position. Press and hold the front of the driver side switch to close it.

Express-Open/Express-Close: To express-open the sunroof, fully press and release the rear of the driver side switch until the sunroof reaches the desired position. To express-close the sunroof, fully press and release the front of the driver side switch. Press the switch again to stop it.

The sunroof also has a sunshade that you can pull forward to block the rays of the sun. The sunshade must be opened and closed manually.

See *Sunroof (Extended Cab) on page 2-22* or *Sunroof (Crew Cab) on page 2-23*.

Performance and Maintenance

StabiliTrak® System

If equipped, the vehicle has a traction control system that limits wheel spin and the StabiliTrak system that assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. Both systems turn on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release on the instrument panel. illuminates and the appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-49*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- To turn off both traction control and StabiliTrak, press and hold until illuminates and the appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-49*.
- Press and release again to turn on both systems.

For more information, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

The TPMS warning light alerts you to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

During cooler conditions, the low tire pressure warning light may appear when the vehicle is first started and then turn off. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressures.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-65*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and, on most vehicles, displays a DIC message when it is necessary to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

To reset the Engine Oil Life System on most vehicles:

1. Display OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC. If the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, the vehicle must be in P (Park) to access this display.
2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button on the DIC, or the trip odometer reset stem if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, for more than five seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

On all vehicles, the Engine Oil Life System can be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal slowly three times within five seconds.
3. Display OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC. If the display shows 100%, the system is reset.

See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*.

Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol)

Vehicles that have a FlexFuel badge and a yellow fuel cap can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 9-86*. For all other vehicles, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Recommended Fuel on page 9-84*.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Roadside Assistance Program

U.S.: **1-800-243-8872**

TTY Users: **1-888-889-2438**

Canada: **1-800-268-6800**

As the owner of a new Chevrolet, you are automatically enrolled in the Roadside Assistance program. This program provides technically trained advisors who are available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, to give minor repair information or make towing arrangements.

For more information see *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*.

Roadside Assistance and OnStar

If you have a current OnStar subscription, press the OnStar button and the current GPS location will be sent to an OnStar advisor who will assess your problem, contact Roadside Assistance, and relay your exact location to get the help you need.

Online Owner Center

The Online Owner Center is a complimentary service that includes online service reminders, vehicle maintenance tips, online owner manual, special privileges, and more.

Sign up today at: **www.chevyownercenter.com** (U.S.) or **www.gm.ca** (Canada).

OnStar®

For vehicles with an active OnStar subscription, OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide a wide range of safety, security, navigation, diagnostics, and calling services.

Automatic Crash Response

In a crash, built-in sensors can automatically alert an OnStar advisor who is immediately connected to the vehicle to see if you need help.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How OnStar Service Works

: Push this blue button to connect to a specially trained OnStar advisor to verify your account information and to answer questions.

: Push this red emergency button to get priority help from specially trained OnStar emergency advisors.

: Push this button for hands-free, voice-activated calling and to give voice commands for Hands-Free Calling and Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Vehicle Diagnostics, Remote Door Unlock, Roadside Assistance, Turn-by-Turn Navigation, and Hands-Free Calling are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available on all vehicles. For more information see the OnStar Owner's Guide or visit www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada), contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

For a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in the glove box.

OnStar service is subject to the OnStar terms and conditions included in the OnStar Subscriber Information.

OnStar service requires wireless communication networks and the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite network. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles at all times.

OnStar service can't work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area, and the wireless service provider has coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar's service. Service involving location information about your vehicle can't work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. The vehicle has to have a working electrical system and adequate battery power for the OnStar equipment to operate. OnStar service may not work if the OnStar equipment isn't properly installed or you haven't maintained it and your vehicle is in good working order and in compliance with all government regulations. If you try to add, connect, or modify any equipment or software in your vehicle, OnStar service may not work. Other problems OnStar can't control may prevent service to you, such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of your vehicle, damage to important parts of your vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

This vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free calling. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-3* for more information.

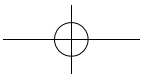
On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voice mail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

Your Responsibility

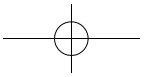
Increase the volume of the radio if the OnStar advisor cannot be heard.

If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, the system may not be functioning properly. Push the button and request a vehicle diagnostic. If the light appears clear (no light appears), your OnStar subscription has expired and all services have been deactivated. Push the button to confirm that the OnStar equipment is active.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



✍ NOTES



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys, Doors and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys 2-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-3
Remote Vehicle Start 2-5
Door Locks 2-8
Power Door Locks 2-8
Delayed Locking 2-9
Automatic Door Locks 2-9
Lockout Protection 2-9
Safety Locks 2-9

Doors

Rear Doors (Extended Cab) 2-10
Tailgate 2-11

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Security 2-12
Anti-Theft Alarm System 2-12
Immobilizer 2-14
Immobilizer Operation 2-14

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors 2-15
Manual Mirrors 2-16
Trailer-Tow Mirrors 2-16
Power Mirrors 2-16
Folding Mirrors 2-17
Heated Mirrors 2-18
Park Tilt Mirrors 2-19

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror 2-19
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-19

Windows

Windows 2-20
Manual Windows 2-20
Power Windows 2-20
Rear Windows 2-21
Sun Visors 2-22

Roof

Sunroof (Extended Cab) 2-22
Sunroof (Crew Cab) 2-23

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.

The key is used for the ignition and all door locks.

The key has a bar-coded key tag that the dealer or qualified locksmith can use to make new keys. Store this information in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

See your dealer if a replacement key or additional key is needed.

Notice: **If the keys get locked in the vehicle, it may have to be damaged to get them out. Always carry a spare key.**

If you are locked out of the vehicle, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-18* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions work up to 60 m (195 ft) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-3*.

With Remote Start (without Remote Start Similar)

(Remote Vehicle Start): For vehicles with this feature, press to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-5* for additional information.

(Lock): Press to lock all the doors.

If enabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC), the turn signal lamps flash once to indicate locking has occurred. If enabled through the DIC, the horn chirps when is pressed again within three seconds. See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for additional information.

Pressing arms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Anti-Theft Alarm System on page 2-12*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2-4 Keys, Doors and Windows

(Unlock): Press once to unlock only the driver door. If is pressed again within three seconds, all remaining doors unlock. The interior lamps may come on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

If enabled through the DIC, the turn signal lamps flash twice to indicate unlocking has occurred. See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53*. If enabled through the DIC, the exterior lights may turn on. See “Approach Lighting” under *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53*.

Pressing on the RKE transmitter disarms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Anti-Theft Alarm System on page 2-12*.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release to locate the vehicle. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm turns off when the ignition is moved to ON/RUN or is pressed again. The ignition must be in LOCK/OFF for the panic alarm to work.

The vehicle comes with two transmitters. Each transmitter will have a number on it: "1" or "2." These numbers correspond to the driver of the vehicle. For example, the memory seat position for driver 1 will be recalled when using the transmitter labeled "1", if enabled through the DIC. See “Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* and *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

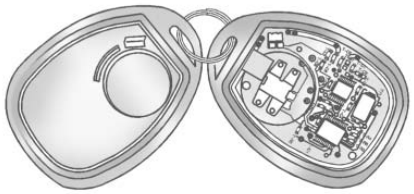
Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See your dealer for transmitter programming.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.**



To replace the battery:

1. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object, such as a flat head screwdriver.
   - Carefully insert the tool into the notch located along the parting line of the transmitter. Do not insert the tool too far. Stop as soon as resistance is felt.
   - Twist the tool until the transmitter is separated.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Snap the transmitter back together.

Remote Vehicle Start

The vehicle may have a remote starting feature. This feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle. It may also start up the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window defogger. Normal operation of the system will return after the key is turned to the ON/RUN position.

If the vehicle has an automatic climate control system, the climate control system will default to a heating or cooling mode depending on the outside temperatures. If the vehicle does not have an automatic climate control system, the system will turn on at the setting the vehicle was set to when the vehicle was last turned off.

During a remote start, if the vehicle has an automatic climate control system and heated seats, the heated seats will turn on during colder outside temperatures and will shut off when the key is turned to ON/RUN. If the vehicle does not have an automatic climate control system, during remote start, manually turn the heated seats on and off. See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-11* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2-6 Keys, Doors and Windows

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using the remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

Do not use the remote start feature if the vehicle is low on fuel. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

If the vehicle has the remote start feature, the RKE transmitter functions will have an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-3* for additional information.

(Remote Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

To start the vehicle using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button. The vehicle's doors will lock. Immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button until the turn signal lamps flash. If you cannot see the vehicle's lamps, press and hold the remote start button for two to four seconds. Pressing the remote start button again after the vehicle has started will turn the engine off.

   When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on while the vehicle is running.

   If the vehicle is left running, it will automatically shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension has been done.
3. If it is the first remote start since the vehicle has been driven, repeat these steps, while the engine is still running, to extend the engine running time by 10 minutes. Remote start can be extended one time.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, insert and turn the key to ON/RUN to drive the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To manually shut off a remote start, do any of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press the remote start button until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch on and then off.

The vehicle can be remote started two separate times between driving sequences. The engine will run for 10 minutes after each remote start.

Or, you can extend the engine run time by another 10 minutes within the first 10 minute remote start time frame, and before the engine stops.

For example, if the lock button and then the remote start buttons are pressed again after the vehicle has been running for 5 minutes, 10 minutes are added, allowing the engine to run for 15 minutes.

The additional 10 minutes are considered a second remote vehicle start.

Once two remote starts, or a single remote start with one time extension has been done, the vehicle must be started with the key. After the key is removed from the ignition, the vehicle can be remote started again.

The vehicle cannot be remote started if the key is in the ignition, the hood is not closed, or if there is an emission control system malfunction and the check engine light comes on.

Also, the engine will turn off during a remote vehicle start if the coolant temperature gets too high or if the oil pressure gets low.

Remote Start Ready

If the vehicle does not have the remote vehicle start feature, it may have the remote start ready feature. This feature allows your dealer to add the manufacturer's remote vehicle start feature.

See your dealer to add the manufacturer's remote vehicle start feature to the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

From the outside, use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the key in the driver door.

From the inside, use the power door locks or manual door locks. To lock or unlock the door with the manual locks, push down or pull up on the manual lock knob.

Power Door Locks

With power door locks, the switches on the front doors can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the doors.

(Lock): Remove the key from the ignition and press to lock the doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delayed Locking

The vehicle may have the delayed locking feature. When locking the doors with the power lock switch and a door is open, the doors will lock five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

This feature can be programmed using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See "Delay Door Lock" under *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53*.

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle may have an automatic lock/unlock feature. This feature can be programmed using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information on DIC programming.

Lockout Protection

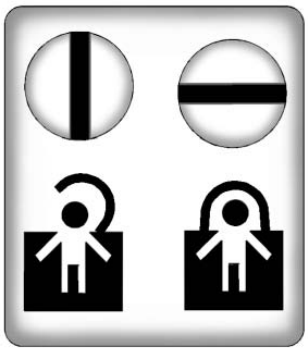
If the driver side power door lock switch is pressed when the driver door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver door will unlock.

If the passenger side power door lock switch is pressed when the front passenger door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the front passenger door will unlock.

Safety Locks

The vehicle has rear door security locks to prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

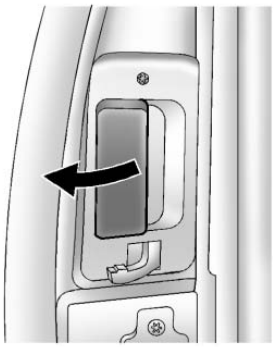


Open the rear doors to access the security locks on the inside edge of each door.

To set the locks, insert a key into the slot and turn it to the horizontal position. The door can only be opened from the outside with the door unlocked. To return the door to normal operation, turn the slot to the vertical position.

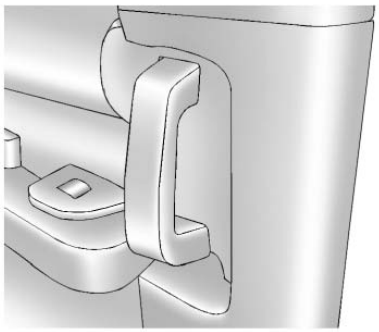
Doors

Rear Doors (Extended Cab)



To open a rear access door from the outside, first open the front door. Then, use the handle located on the front edge of the rear access door to open it.

The rear access door must be closed before the front door can close.



To open a rear access door from the inside, first open the front door. Then, use the handle located on the inside of the rear access door to open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tailgate

⚠ WARNING

It is extremely dangerous to ride on the tailgate, even when the vehicle is operated at low speeds. People riding on the tailgate can easily lose their balance and fall in response to vehicle maneuvers. Falling from a moving vehicle may result in serious injuries or death. Do not allow people to ride on the tailgate. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

On vehicles with a lock on the tailgate, use the key to lock or unlock the tailgate.

Open the tailgate by lifting up on its handle while pulling the tailgate toward you.

To shut the tailgate, firmly push it upward until it latches.

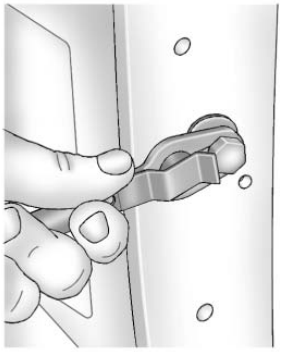
After you put the tailgate back up, pull it back towards you to be sure it latches securely.

Tailgate Removal

The tailgate can be removed to allow for different loading situations. Someone may need to assist with removal to avoid damage to the vehicle.

On vehicles with a Rear Vision Camera, it must be disconnected before removing the tailgate. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-78* for more information.

To remove the tailgate:



1. Raise the tailgate slightly and release both retaining cable clips. To release the retaining cable clips, lift the cable so it points straight out. Lift the clip over the bolt, and push the cable forward then rotate down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. With the tailgate about halfway open, lift the right edge of the tailgate from the lower pivot.

   On vehicles with the tailgate assist feature, raise the tailgate nearly all the way to the closed position prior to removing the left edge.

3. Move the tailgate to the right to release the left edge.

Reverse this procedure to reinstall the tailgate. Make sure the tailgate is secure.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

This vehicle may have a content theft-deterrent alarm system.

This is the security light.

To arm the theft-deterrent system:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. The security light should flash.

   If the delayed locking feature is active, the alarm will not be activated until all doors are closed and the security light goes off.

3. Close all doors. The security light will stop flashing and go off after approximately 30 seconds. The system is armed when the security light goes off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a locked driver door is opened without using the RKE transmitter, a 10 second pre-alarm will occur. The horn will chirp and the lights will flash. If the key is not placed in the ignition and turned to START or the door is not unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter during the 10 second pre-alarm, the alarm will go off. The vehicle's headlamps will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds, then will turn off to save the battery power.

The theft-deterrent system will not activate if the doors are locked with the key or the manual door lock. It activates only if you use the power door lock switch or the RKE transmitter. The vehicle can be started with the correct key if the alarm is set off.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you do not want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key after the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter.

If the alarm is set off, press unlock on the RKE transmitter or place the key in the ignition and turn it to START.

Testing the Alarm

To test the alarm:

1. Lower the driver window and open the driver door.
2. Press lock on the RKE transmitter.
3. Close the door and wait for the security light to go out.
4. Reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock, and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the headlamps flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-48*.

If the alarm does not sound or the headlamps do not flash, see your dealer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-18* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Immobilizer Operation

This vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the key is turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY or START from the LOCK/OFF position.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

If the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when trying to start the vehicle, there may be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-48*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance.

It is possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Up to 10 keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

See your dealer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new additional key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the original, already programmed key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the new key to be programmed and turn it to the ON/RUN position within five seconds of turning the ignition to the LOCK/OFF position in Step 3.

   The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you lose or damage your PASS-Key® III+ key, see your dealer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

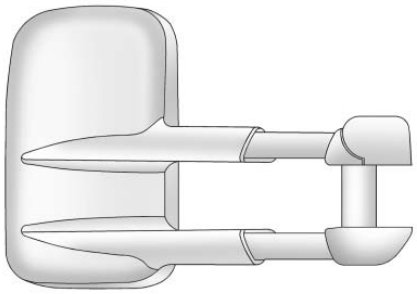
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Mirrors

Adjust the outside mirrors for a clearer view.

Using hood-mounted air deflectors and add-on convex mirror attachments could decrease mirror performance.

Trailer-Tow Mirrors



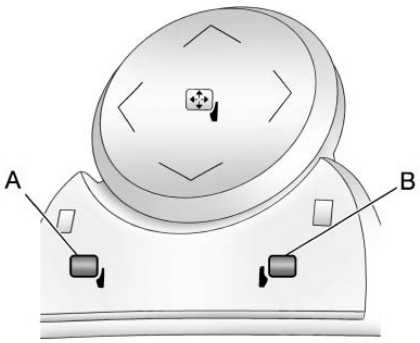
If the vehicle has towing mirrors, they can be adjusted for a clearer view of the objects behind you.

Manually pull out the mirror head to extend it for better visibility when towing a trailer.

The lower portion of the mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved to see more from the driver seat. The convex mirror can be adjusted manually to the driver preferred position for better vision.

The mirror may have a turn signal arrow that flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Power Mirrors



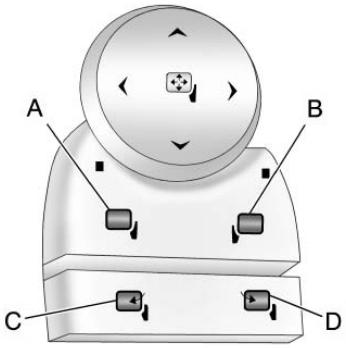
Vehicles with outside power mirrors have controls located on the driver door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To adjust each mirror:

1. Press (A) or (B) to select the driver or passenger side mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows located on the control pad to adjust the mirror.
3. Adjust the outside mirror so that the side of the vehicle and the area behind are seen.
4. Press either (A) or (B) again to deselect the mirror.

Folding Mirrors



Vehicles with outside power foldaway mirrors have controls located on the driver door.

Power Foldaway

1. Press (C) to fold the mirrors out to the driving position.
2. Press (D) to fold the mirrors in to the folded position.

Resetting the Power Foldaway Mirrors

Reset the power foldaway mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors will not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position. A popping noise may be heard during the resetting of the power foldaway mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

Manual Foldaway

Manually fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, pull the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward, to return to its original position.

Automatic Dimming

If equipped with an automatic dimming mirror. The driver outside mirror adjusts for the glare of the headlamps behind you. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror on page 2-19*.

Turn Signal Indicator

The vehicle may also have a turn signal indicator on the mirror. An arrow on the mirror flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Heated Mirrors

For vehicles with heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the mirrors. If the vehicle has a towing mirror, only the upper glass of the mirror is heated. The lower convex part of the towing mirror is not heated.

Depending on the vehicle's features, see “Rear Window Defogger” under *Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning) on page 8-1* or *Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only) on page 8-4* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Park Tilt Mirrors

If the vehicle has the memory package, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This feature lets the driver view the curb when parallel parking. The mirror(s) return to the original position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), or the ignition is turned off or to OFF/LOCK.

Turn this feature on or off through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Adjust manual rearview mirrors to see clearly behind the vehicle. Hold the mirror in the center to adjust it. To reduce headlamp glare during night use, pull the tab forward. Push the tab back for daytime use.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror.

Automatic dimming reduces the glare from the headlamps of the vehicle behind you. The dimming feature comes on and the indicator light illuminates each time the ignition is turned to start.

⏻ **(On/Off):** Press to turn the dimming feature on or off.

The vehicle may also have a Rear Vision Camera (RVC). See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-78* for more information.

If the vehicle has RVC, the ⏻ button for turning the dimming feature on or off will not be available.

Vehicles with OnStar have three additional control buttons for the OnStar system. See your dealer for more information about OnStar and how to subscribe to it. See the OnStar Owner Guide for more information about the services OnStar provides.

Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof (if equipped).

Manual Windows

Turn the hand crank on each door to manually raise or lower the manual windows.

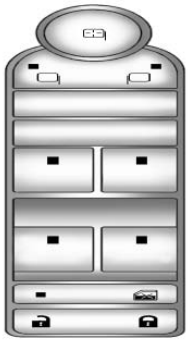
Power Windows

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Crew Cab Shown

If the vehicle has power windows, controls are located on each door.

The driver door has a switch for the passenger and rear windows as well. The power windows will work when the ignition has been turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35*.

Push the switch down to lower the window, and pull up the front of the switch to raise the window.

Express-down Windows

Vehicles with the express-down feature allow the driver and front passenger windows to be lowered without holding the switch. Push the switch down to the second detent, then release, to activate the express-down mode. The express-down mode can be canceled at any time by pulling up on the front of the switch. To open the window partway, push the switch down to the first detent until the window is at the desired position.

Window Lockout

(Window Lockout): If a crew cab or extended cab vehicle has power windows, the driver door power window switch has a lockout feature. This feature prevents the rear windows from operating, except from the driver position. Press the switch to engage or disengage the lockout feature. An indicator light on the switch will come on when the lockout feature is engaged, and will go off when disengaged.

Rear Windows

Power Sliding Rear Window

On vehicles with a power sliding rear window, the switch is located in the overhead console.

The power sliding rear window works when the ignition has been turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35* for more information.

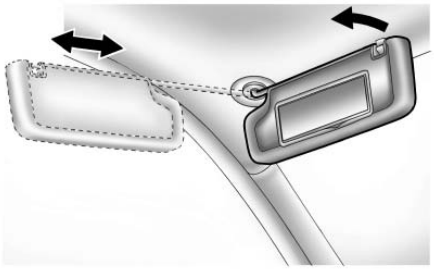
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The power sliding rear window cannot be operated manually.

>: Push to open the window.

<: Pull to close the window.

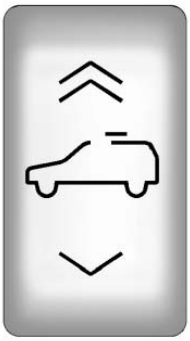
Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to extend along the rod or to pivot to the side window.

Roof

Sunroof (Extended Cab)



On vehicles with a sunroof, the sunroof switch is located on the headliner above the rearview mirror.

The sunroof only operates when the ignition is in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN or the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35* for more information.

Vent: From the closed position, press and hold the rear of the switch to vent the sunroof. To close the sunroof, press and hold the front of the switch.

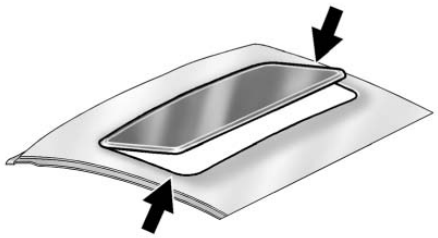
Open: From the vent position, the sunroof can be fully opened either manually or by using the express-open feature. To open manually, press the rear of the switch to the first detent and hold until the sunroof has reached the desired position. To open using express-open, press the rear of the switch to the second detent and release. The sunroof will move to the full open position. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Close: From the vent, or open position, press and hold the front of the switch to close the sunroof.

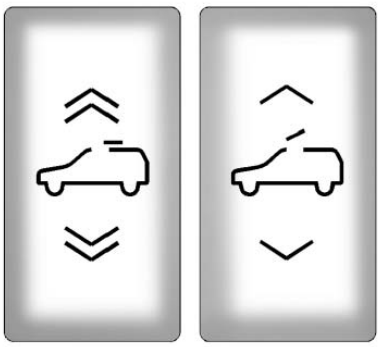
The sunroof also has a roller sunshade that can be used to block the rays of the sun. The roller sunshade can be manually operated with the sunroof in an open or closed position. To open the sunshade, press and unlatch it, and roll it back. To close, pull it forward and latch it into the closed position.

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation, noise, or plugging the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Sunroof (Crew Cab)



On vehicles with a sunroof, there are two sunroof switches located in the overhead console above the rearview mirror.

The sunroof only operates when the ignition is in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN or the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35* Retained Accessory Power (RAP) for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2-24 Keys, Doors and Windows

Vent: From the closed position, press the rear of the passenger side switch to vent the sunroof. To close the sunroof, press and hold the front of the passenger side switch.

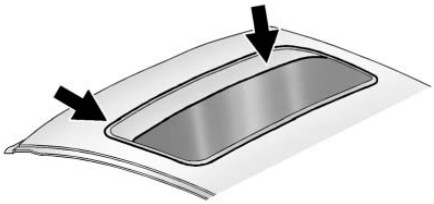
Manual-Open/Manual-Close: To open the sunroof, press the rear of the driver side switch to the first detent and hold until the sunroof reaches the desired position. To close the sunroof, press the front of the driver side switch to the first detent and hold until the sunroof reaches the desired position.

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

Express-Open/Express-Close: To express-open the sunroof, press the rear of the driver side switch to the second detent and release. The sunroof will open automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time. To express-close the sunroof, press the front of the driver side switch to the second detent and release. The sunroof will close automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time.

The sunroof also has a sunshade which can be pulled forward to block sun rays. The sunshade must be opened and closed manually.

Anti-Pinch Feature: If an object is in the path of the sunroof while it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation, noise, or plugging the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-2

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 3-3
Center Seat 3-5
Power Seat Adjustment 3-5
Lumbar Adjustment 3-7
Reclining Seatbacks 3-9
Seatback Latches 3-11
Heated Front Seats 3-11

Rear Seats
Rear Seats (Extended Cab Full Bench) 3-12
Rear Seats (All Split Bench and Hybrid Full Bench) 3-13

Safety Belts
Safety Belts 3-14
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 3-17
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-23
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-28
Lap Belt (Crew and Extended Cab) 3-28
Safety Belt Extender 3-29
Safety System Check 3-29
Safety Belt Care 3-30
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash 3-30

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-31
Where Are the Airbags? 3-33
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-34
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-36
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-37
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 3-37
Airbag On-Off Switch 3-39
Passenger Sensing System 3-42
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-48
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . 3-48
Airbag System Check 3-50
Replacing Airbag System Parts After a Crash 3-50

Child Restraints
Older Children 3-51
Infants and Young Children 3-53
Child Restraint Systems 3-55
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-57
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 3-59
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 3-68
Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) 3-68
Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) 3-71
Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) 3-71

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

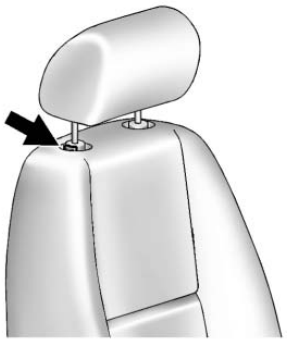
Head Restraints

The front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ WARNING

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.



Pull the head restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down.

Push down on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The head restraints are not designed to be removed.

The rear seat has headrests that can be adjusted up and down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Seats

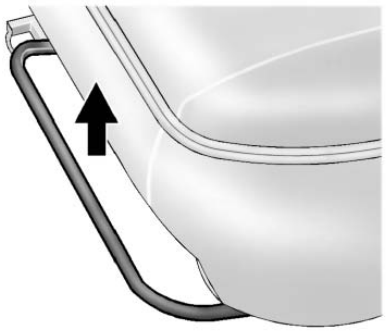
Seat Adjustment

Manual Seats

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

If the vehicle has a manual seat, it can be moved forward or rearward.



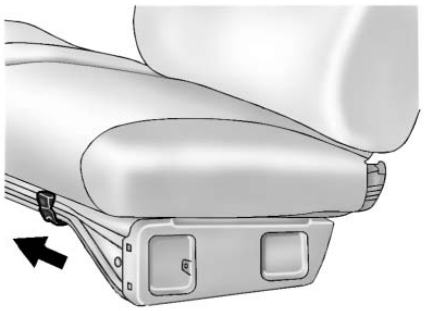
Split Bench or Bucket Seat

To adjust the seat:

1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

   Try to move the seat with your body to make sure it is locked into place.

Some vehicles have a folding front bench seat.



Bench Seat

To adjust the seat:

1. Move the lever to the right to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

   Try to move the seat with your body to make sure it is locked into place.

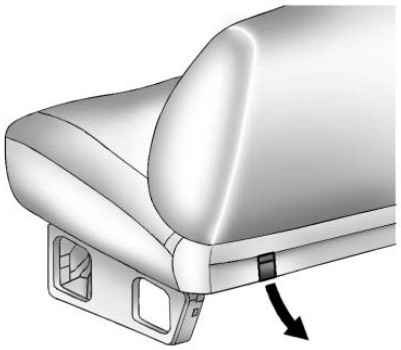
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-4 Seats and Restraints

Folding the Bench Seat

To fold the bench seat:

1. Push back the front of the seatback.



2. Pull one of the release levers, located on the lower part of the rear seatback on each end of the seat, completely out.
3. Hold the lever out and fold the seatback forward until it rests on the seat.
4. Release the lever.

   Do not try to release the seatback before pulling the release levers because it can damage the release system.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ WARNING

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

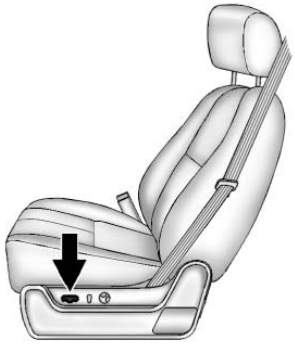
Reverse the steps to raise the seatback. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure the seatback is locked in the upright position before driving. Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Center Seat

Your vehicle may have a front center seat. The seatback doubles as an armrest and cupholder/ storage area for the driver and passenger when the center seat is not used. Do not use it as a seating position when the seatback is folded down.

Power Seat Adjustment



Driver Seat with Power Seat Control, Power Recline, and Power Lumbar Shown

For vehicles with power seats, the controls are on the outboard side of the seats.

Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.

The vehicle may have additional features to adjust the power seat:

- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

On seats with power reclining seatbacks, the control is next to the power seat control on the outboard side of the seats. See “Power Reclining Seatbacks” under *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-9*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-6 Seats and Restraints

Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals

On vehicles with the memory feature, the controls on the driver door are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver seat, outside mirrors, and the adjustable throttle and brake pedals, if the vehicle has this feature.

Storing Memory Positions

To save into memory:

1. Adjust the driver seat and seatback recliner, both outside mirrors, and the throttle and brake pedals, if available.

   See *Power Mirrors on page 2-16* and *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-32* for more information.

   Not all mirrors and adjustable throttles and brake pedals will have the ability to save and recall their positions.
2. Press and hold “1” until two beeps sound.
3. Repeat for a second driver position using “2.”

To recall the memory positions, press and release “1” or “2.” The vehicle must be in P (Park). A single beep will sound. The seat, outside mirrors, and adjustable throttle and brake pedals will move to the position previously stored for the identified driver.

Memory Remote Recall

The memory feature can recall the driver seat, outside mirrors, and pedals, if available, to stored positions when entering the vehicle.

To activate memory remote recall, unlock the driver door with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. The driver seat, outside mirrors, and adjustable pedals, if available, will move to the memory position associated with the transmitter used to unlock the vehicle.

The automatic recall feature can be turned on or off using the vehicle personalization menu. See “Memory Seat Recall” under *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

To stop recall movement, press one of the power seat controls, memory buttons, or power mirror buttons, or the adjustable pedal switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If something has blocked the driver seat and/or the adjustable pedals while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by pressing the appropriate memory button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

Easy Exit Driver Seat

The easy exit driver seat feature can move the seat rearward to allow extra room to exit the vehicle.

(Easy Exit Driver Seat): Press to recall the easy exit seat position. The vehicle must be in P (Park).

If the easy exit seat feature is programmed on in the vehicle personalization menu, automatic seat movement occurs when the ignition key is removed.

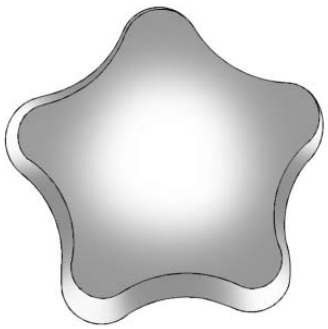
A single beep sounds. The driver seat moves back approximately 8 cm (3 in). To move the seat back farther, press the easy exit seat button again until the seat is all the way back.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling the exit position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the power seat control rearward for two seconds. Try recalling the exit position again. If the exit position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

See “Easy Exit Recall” and “Easy Exit Setup” under *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Lumbar Adjustment

Manual Lumbar



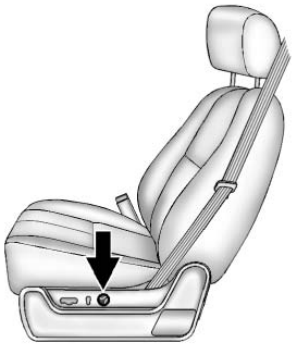
On vehicles with this feature the control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Increase or decrease lumbar support by turning the knob forward or rearward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-8 Seats and Restraints

Power Lumbar



On seats with power lumbar, the controls used to operate this feature are located on the outboard side of the seats.

This vehicle may have two-way lumbar.

- To increase lumbar support, press and hold the top of the control.
- To decrease lumbar support, press and hold the bottom of the control.

The vehicle may have four-way lumbar.

- To increase lumbar support, press and hold the front of the control.
- To decrease lumbar support, press and hold the rear of the control.
- To raise the height of the lumbar support, press and hold the top of the control.
- To lower the height of the lumbar support, press and hold the bottom of the control.

Release the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of lumbar support.

The vehicle may have a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Keep in mind that as your seating position changes, as it may during long trips, so should the position of your lumbar support. Adjust the seat as needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

The shoulder belt cannot do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

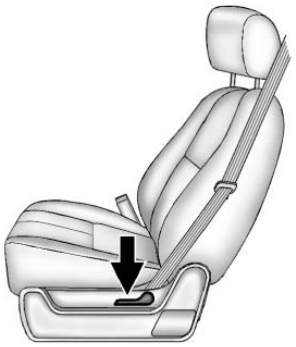
The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

On seats with manual reclining seatbacks, the lever used to operate them is located on the outboard side of the seat(s).



To recline the seatback:

1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks

If the seats have power reclining seatbacks, the control used to recline them is located on the outboard side of the seat behind the power seat control.

- To recline the seatback, tilt the top of the control rearward.
- To bring the seatback forward, tilt the top of the control forward.

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seatback Latches

The front seatbacks tilt forward to allow access to the rear of the cab.

To tilt the seatback forward, lift the lever located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position, push the seatback rearward until it latches. After returning the seatback to its upright position, push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ WARNING

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

On vehicles with heated front seats, the buttons are located on the front doors, near the door handle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Heated Seatback): Press to turn on the heated seatback.

(Heated Seat and Seatback): Press to turn on the heated seat and seatback.

Repeatedly press and release the button to cycle through the temperature settings: high, medium, and low, and to turn the heat to the seat off. Indicator lights next to the button show the selected setting: three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

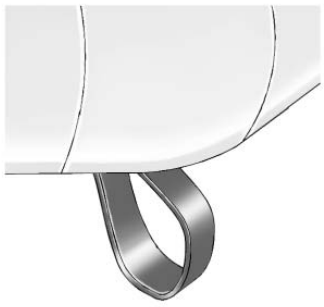
The heated seats will be canceled 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off. To use the heated seat feature after restarting the vehicle, press the heated seat or seatback button again.

Rear Seats

Rear Seats (Extended Cab Full Bench)

Folding the Rear Seat

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



To fold the seat up:

1. Pull up on the front of the seat cushion while pulling down on the release strap, located under the seat cushion.
2. Pull the seat cushion up until it latches with the seatback.
3. After latching the seat cushion up, pull forward on it to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To fold the seat down:

1. Push the seat cushion rearward while pulling the release strap, located under the seat cushion. Pull the seat cushion down until it latches.
2. After latching the seat cushion, pull up on it to make sure it is locked.

   Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seat cushion.

Rear Seats (All Split Bench and Hybrid Full Bench)

Folding Rear Seat

On a vehicle with a second row 60/40 split seat, either side of the rear seat may be folded for added cargo space.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

Make sure that nothing is on the seat.

To fold the seat, slowly pull the seat cushion up.

To return the seat to the normal seating position, slowly pull the seat cushion down.

Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seat cushion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, the injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from the vehicle. You and your passenger(s) can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ WARNING

People riding on the tailgate (if equipped) can easily lose their balance and fall even when the vehicle is operated at low speeds. Falling from a moving vehicle may result in serious injuries or death.

⚠ WARNING

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-21* for additional information.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

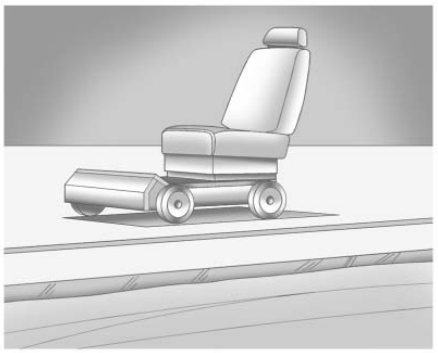
A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without safety belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter ... a lot!

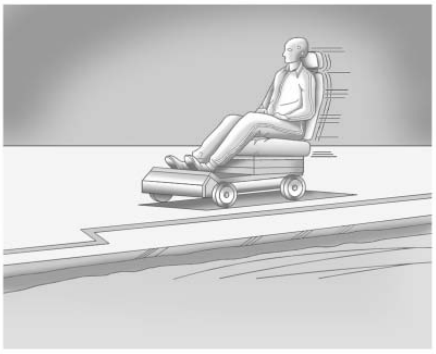
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Why Safety Belts Work

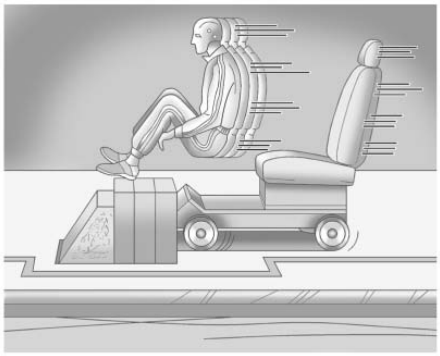
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

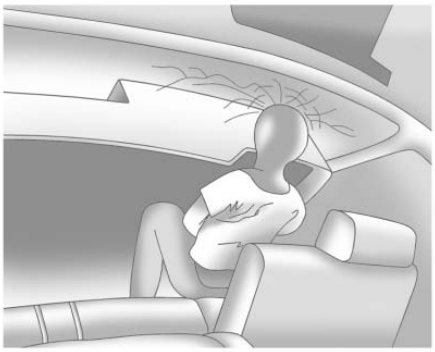


Put someone on it.

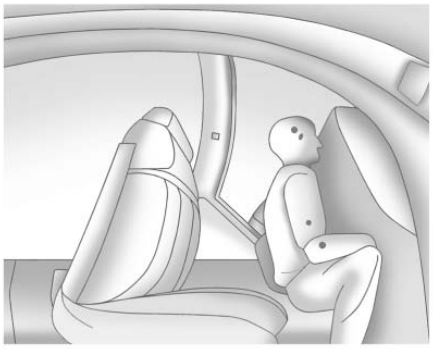


Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

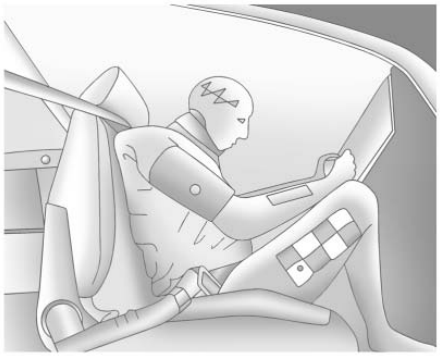
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 40 km (25 miles) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 65 km/h (40 mph).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-51* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-53*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

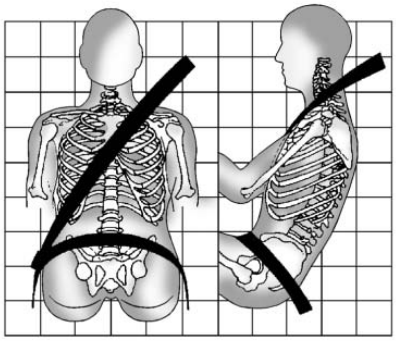
It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-18 Seats and Restraints

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

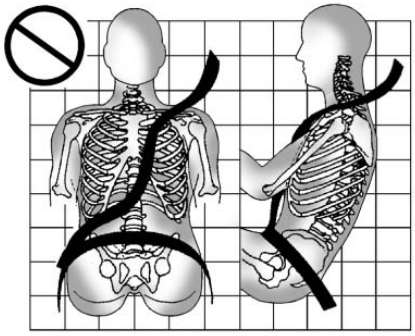
First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.



Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Q: What is wrong with this?



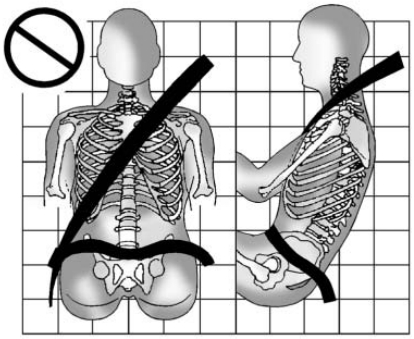
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Q: What is wrong with this?



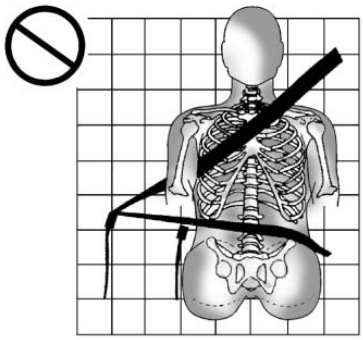
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?

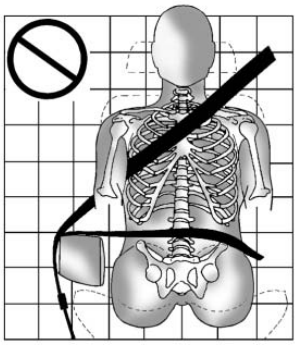


A: The belt is buckled in the wrong buckle.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Q: What is wrong with this?



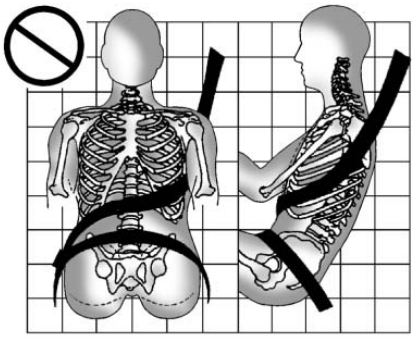
A: The belt is over an armrest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Q: What is wrong with this?



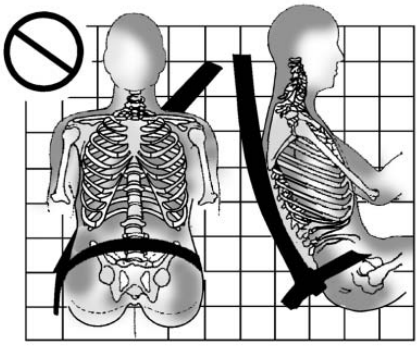
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?

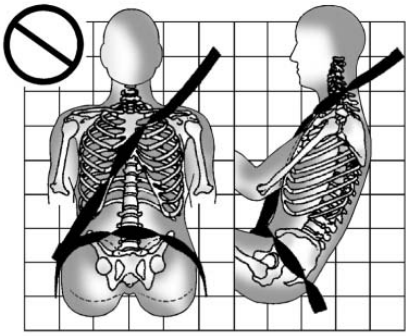


A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Q: What is wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

If the vehicle is a regular cab, then all seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt. If the vehicle is a crew or extended cab, then all seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt except for the center front passenger position (if equipped), which has a lap belt. See *Lap Belt (Crew and Extended Cab) on page 3-28* for more information.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

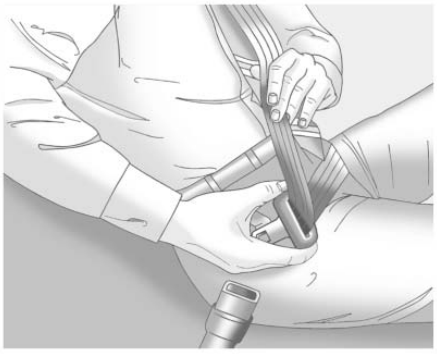
   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

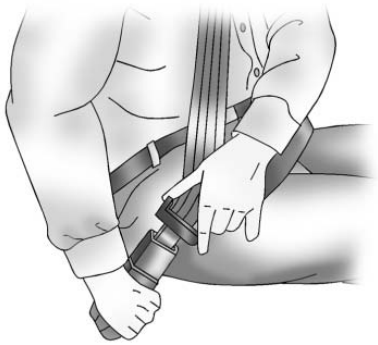
   Engaging the child restraint locking feature may affect the passenger sensing system, if equipped. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-24 Seats and Restraints



If the belt stops before it reaches the buckle, when using the lap-shoulder belt in a rear center seating position of a crew-cab, tilt the latch plate and keep pulling the safety belt until it can be buckled.



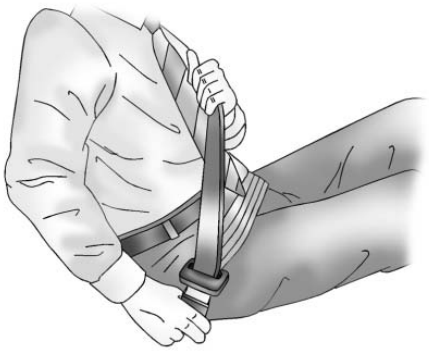
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 3-29*.

   If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

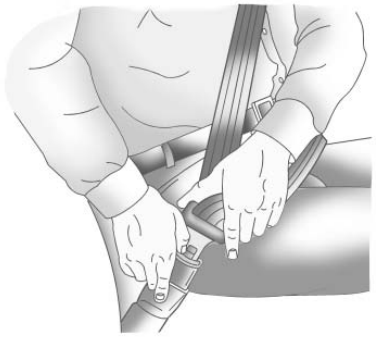
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



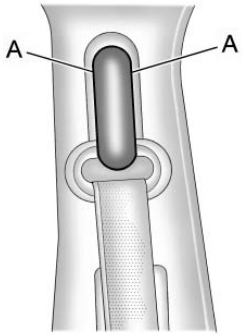
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger.

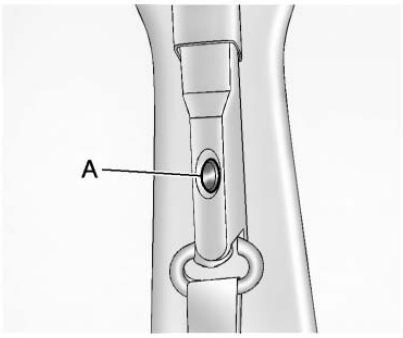
Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-17*.



Regular and Crew Cab

To move the adjuster down for the regular and crew cabs, squeeze the buttons (A) on the sides of the height adjuster and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Extended Cab

On the extended cab, push down on the release button (A) and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

You can move the adjuster up just by pushing up on the shoulder belt guide.

After you move the adjuster to where you want it, try to move it down, without squeezing the buttons for the regular and crew cabs, or without pushing the release button for extended cabs, to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if your vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash on page 3-30*.

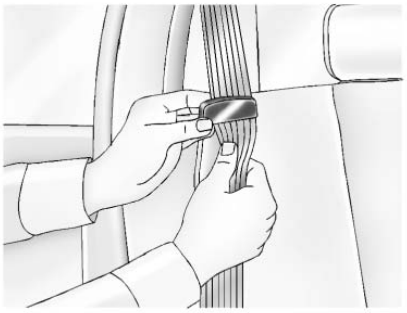
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

This vehicle may have rear shoulder belt comfort guides. If not, they are available through your dealer. The guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed and properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

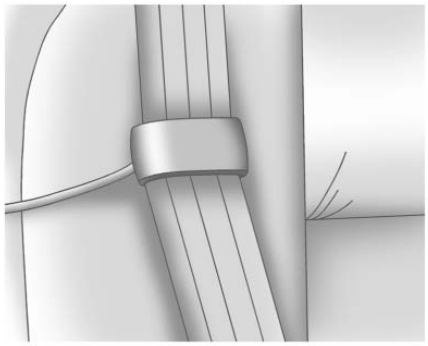
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here is how to install a comfort guide to the shoulder belt:

1. Remove the guide from its storage clip on the interior body.



2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

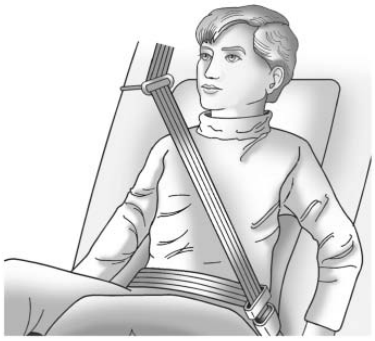
⚠ WARNING

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide onto the storage clip.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

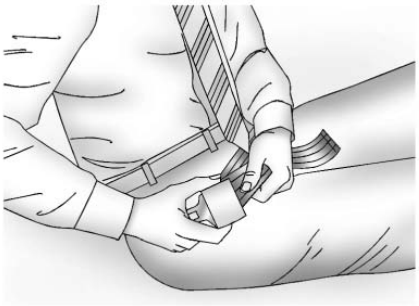
A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Lap Belt (Crew and Extended Cab)

This section is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt, see *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-23*.

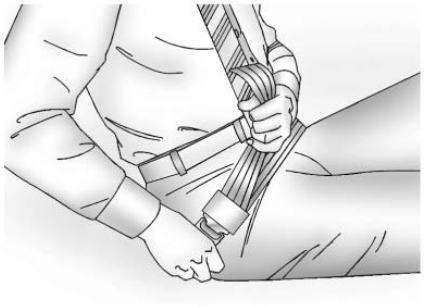
Your vehicle may have a center seating position. When you sit in the center front seating position, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor.



To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Buckle, position, and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 3-29*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-21* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care on page 3-30*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the person seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in the vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ WARNING

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are your only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-34*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-32 Seats and Restraints

⚠ WARNING

Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 3-51* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-53*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The right front passenger airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

If the vehicle has seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger, they are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

If the vehicle has roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers, they are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ WARNING

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

If the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) of your vehicle is 3 855 kg (8,500 lb) or above, the vehicle has single stage airbags. If the GVWR is below 3 855 kg (8,500 lb) then the vehicle has dual stage airbags. Vehicles with a full bench seat are equipped with single state airbags. You can find the GVWR on the certification label on the rear edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* for more information.

The vehicle may have dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact.

For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Vehicles with dual stage airbags also have seat position sensors which enable the sensing system to monitor the position of the driver seat (all models), and on crew cab and extended cab models the right front passenger seat on light duty models only. The seat position sensor provides information that is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full deployment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle may or may not have seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-31*. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck, or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact. In a rollover event, roof-rail airbag deployment is determined by the direction of the roll.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbags modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-34* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-36*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle may have a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

⚠ WARNING

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.

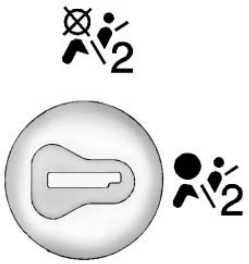
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 13-16* and *Event Data Recorders on page 13-17*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Airbag On-Off Switch

If one of the switches pictured in the following illustrations is located in the glove box, the vehicle has an airbag on-off switch that you can use to manually turn on or off the right front passenger airbag.

United States



Canada and Mexico

If the vehicle does not have an airbag off switch, it may have a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This switch should only be turned to the off position if the person in the right front passenger position is a member of a passenger risk group identified by the national government as follows:

Infant. An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- *My vehicle has no rear seat;*
- *My vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or*
- *The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.*

Child age 1 to 12. A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

- *My vehicle has no rear seat;*
- *Although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of my vehicle; or*
- *The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.*

Medical Condition. A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- *Causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and*
- *Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.*

⚠ WARNING

If the right front passenger's airbag is turned off for a person who is not in a risk group identified by the national government, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate

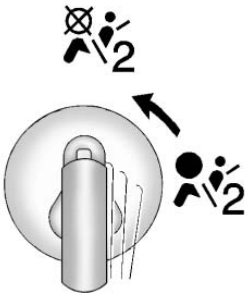
(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING (Continued)

and help protect the person sitting there. Do not turn off the passenger's airbag unless the person sitting there is in a risk group.

United States



Canada and Mexico

To turn off the right front passenger airbag, insert the ignition key into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the off position.

The word OFF or the off symbol will come on in the passenger airbag status indicator located in the overhead console to let you know that the right front passenger airbag is off, after the system check is completed. The airbag off light will come on and stay on to let you know that the right front passenger's airbag is off. See *Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-23*.

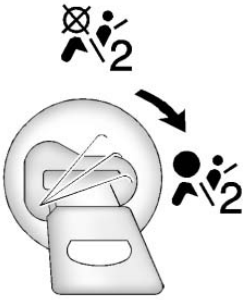
⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the right front passenger airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

United States



Canada and Mexico

To turn the right front passenger airbag on again, insert the ignition key into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the on position.

The right front passenger frontal airbag is now enabled (may inflate). See *Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-23* for more information.

Passenger Sensing System

If the vehicle has one of the indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, unless there is an airbag off switch located in the glove box. If there is an airbag off switch, the vehicle does not have a passenger sensing system. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information.

The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In addition, if the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, the label on the vehicle's sun visors refers to “ADVANCED AIRBAGS”.

United States

Canada and Mexico

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check.

If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-25*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbag, seat-mounted side impact airbags (if equipped), and the roof-rail airbags (if equipped) are not affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-25*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-68* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-71*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.

6. Restart the vehicle.

   The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's seating posture and body build. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the Off Indicator is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the right front passenger frontal airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

If the shoulder portion of the belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature will be engaged. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag off for some adult size occupants. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-48* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-14*.

⚠ WARNING

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, the vehicle may have a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger's position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42*.

If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 13-1*.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels on page 10-77* for additional important information.

Q: What if I added a snow plow? Will it keep the airbags from working properly?

A: We have designed our airbag systems to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including snow plowing with vehicles that have the optional Snow Plow Prep Package (RPO VYU). But do not change or defeat the snow plow's "tripping mechanism." If you do, it can damage your snow plow and your vehicle, and it may cause an airbag inflation.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 13-1*.

In addition, your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-36*. See your dealer for service.**

Replacing Airbag System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the airbag systems in your vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure your airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

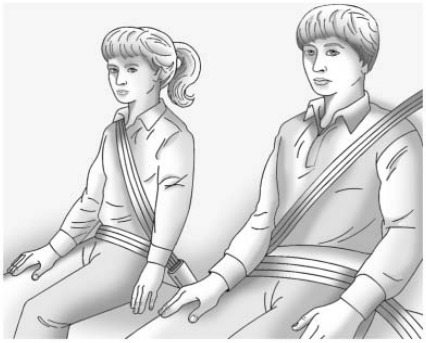
If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-23* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-23*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-52 Seats and Restraints

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

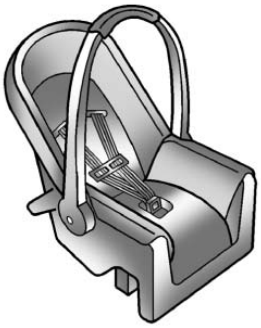
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ WARNING

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems



(A) Rear-Facing Infant Seat

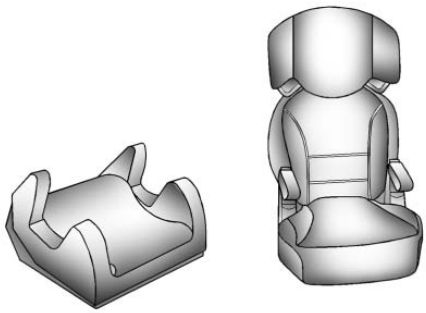
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(B) Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



(C) Booster Seats

A booster seat (C) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas of the United States and Canada, Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3-58 Seats and Restraints

If a child restraint is secured in the right front passenger seat, and the vehicle has a switch in the glove box to manually turn off the right front passenger airbag, see *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* and *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-68* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* for more information, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system or airbag switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

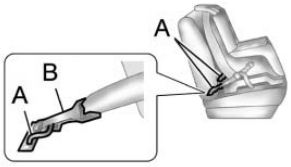
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

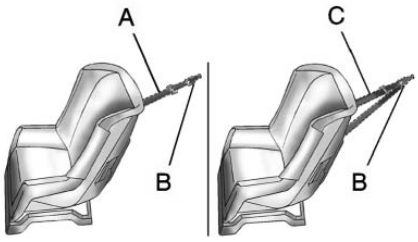
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



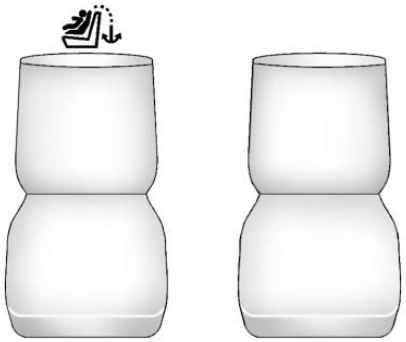
A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

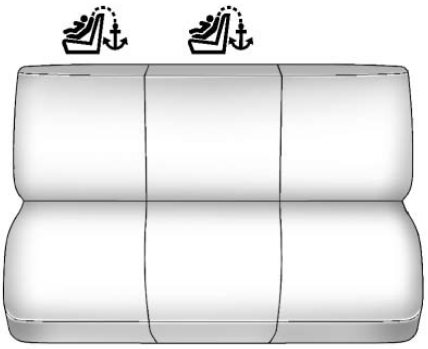
Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Regular Cab — Two-Passenger Front Seat

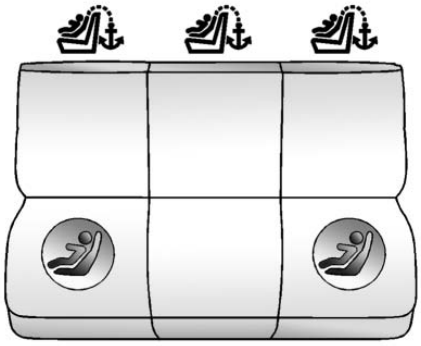


Regular Cab — Three-Passenger Front Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

Do not install a child restraint in the center front seat position. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-68* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



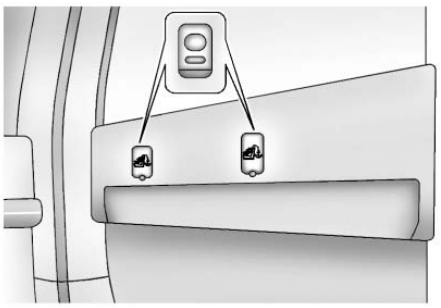
Crew and Extended Cab Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

For crew and extended cab models, the rear outboard seating positions have exposed metal lower anchors located in the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

For regular cab models, there is an anchor symbol on the covers to assist you in locating the top tether anchors.

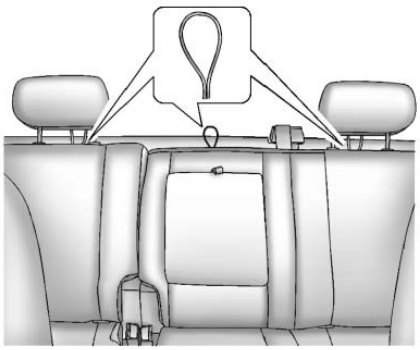


Regular Cab

Do not install a child restraint in the center seat position. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-68* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For regular cab models, the top tether anchors are located under covers on the back panel behind the passenger seat. Remove the trim plug to access the anchor. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Crew Cab Shown, Extended Cab Similar

For crew and extended cab models, the top tether anchors are the loops located near the top of the seatback for each rear seating position. These loops will be used to route the top tether through, as well as, to secure the top tether in the vehicle. Be sure to use an anchor (loop) located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Be sure to read the instructions following to properly install a child restraint using these loops.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-57* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ WARNING

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor, except for the center top tether anchors in the crew and extended cabs. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

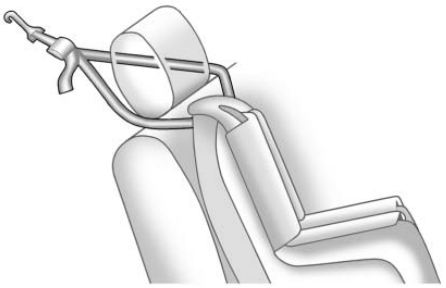
Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

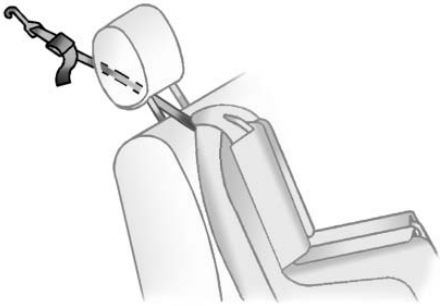
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Regular Cab Models

1. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if your vehicle has one. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   1.1. Pull the passenger seatback forward by pulling the recliner handle upward to access the top tether anchor. See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-9* for additional information.
   1.2. Find the top tether anchor.
   1.3. Remove the cover to expose the anchor.
   1.4. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.



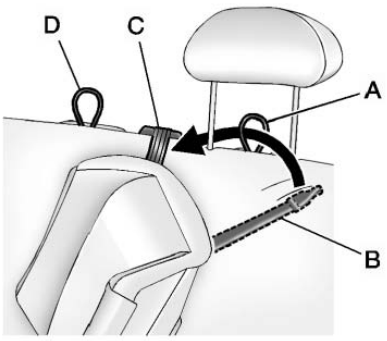
If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-68* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-71* for instructions on installing the child restraint using the safety belts.
3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement for proper installation.

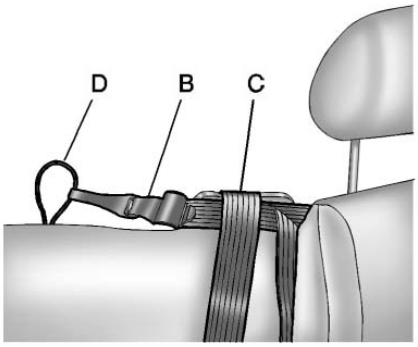
Crew and Extended Cab Models

1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor (loop), if your vehicle has one. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:



Example — Rear Driver Side Position

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Example — Rear Driver Side Position

2.1. When using a child restraint with a top tether in the rear driver side position:

A. Raise the headrest or head restraint.

B. Route the top tether (B) between the headrest or head restraint posts, through the loop (A), behind the inboard headrest or head restraint post, and under the center shoulder belt (C).

C. Attach the top tether (B) to the top tether anchor (loop) (D) at the center rear seating position.

2.2. When using a child restraint with a top tether in the rear center position:

A. Route the top tether (B) through the center loop (D), and behind the inboard passenger side headrest or head restraint post.

B. Attach the top tether (B) to the top tether anchor (loop) at the rear passenger side seating position.

2.3. When using a child restraint with a top tether in the rear passenger position:

A. Raise the headrest or head restraint.

B. Route the top tether (B) between the headrest or head restraint posts, through the loop on the passenger side and behind the inboard headrest or head restraint post.

C. Attach the top tether (B) to the top tether anchor (loop) (D) at the center rear seating position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.4. Tighten the top tether when and as the child restraint manufacturer's instructions say.

When the top tether is tightened, the anchor (loop) may bend. This is normal and will not damage the vehicle.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement for proper installation.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for top tether anchor locations.

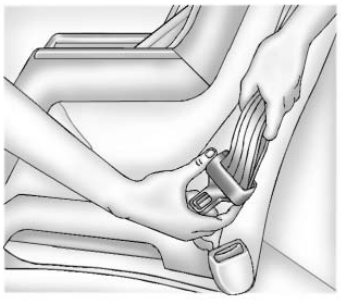
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

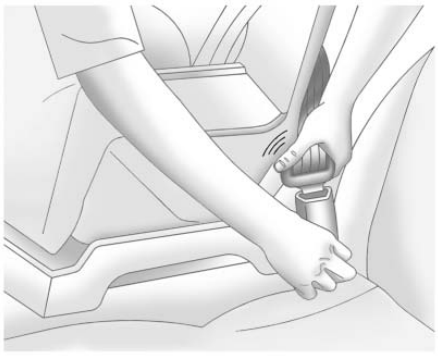
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-57*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



For crew cab second row seatings positions, tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

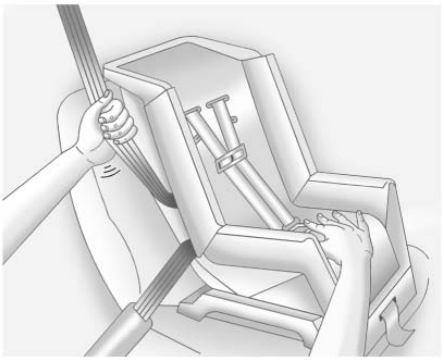
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for more information.
7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position)

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position)

With Passenger Sensing System

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-57*.

In addition, the vehicle may have a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-25* for more information on this, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

The vehicle may have a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system, if equipped, has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* for additional information.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

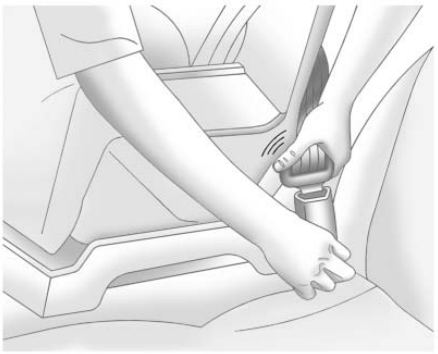
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system, if equipped, has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-25*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

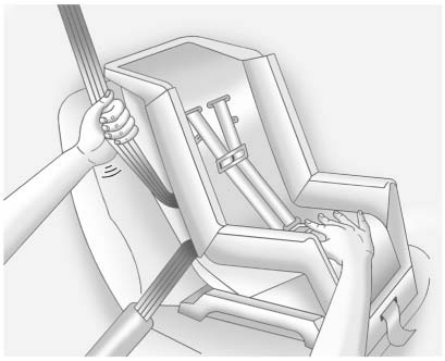


4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat and the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for more information.

8. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the vehicle is equipped with a passenger sensing system, and when the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

With Airbag Off Switch

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-57*.

There may be a switch in the glove box that you can use to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front unless airbag is off.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Even if the airbag switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the right front passenger airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information, including important safety information.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

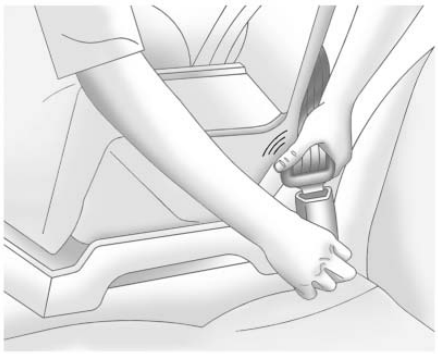
In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   If you have no other choice but to install a rear-facing child restraint in this seat, make sure the airbag is off once the child restraint has been installed.

   When the airbag off switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator in the airbag off light should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-23*.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

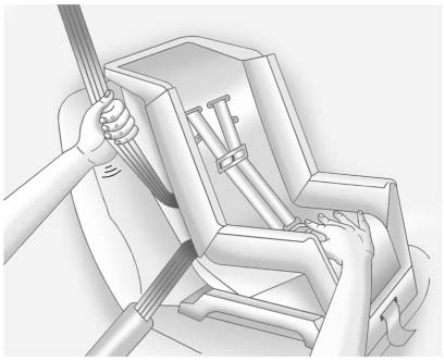


4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. If your vehicle does not have a rear seat and your child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59*.

8. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you turned the airbag off with the switch, turn on the right front passenger airbag when you remove the child restraint from the vehicle unless the person who will be sitting there is a member of a passenger airbag risk group. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information, including important safety information.

Heavy Duty Crew Cab Only

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-57*.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat. Here is why:

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

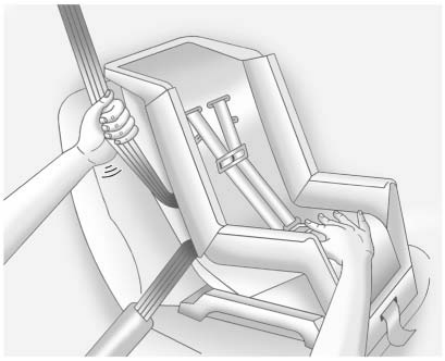
1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. If your child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-59* for more information.

8. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage

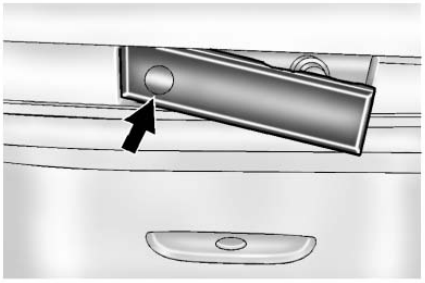
Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage 4-1
Glove Box 4-1
Cupholders 4-1
Armrest Storage 4-1
Center Console Storage 4-2

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage

For vehicles equipped with an instrument panel storage area, it is located above the glove box.



Access the storage area by pressing and holding in the driver side of the handle and pull out on the exposed portion of the handle.

Glove Box

Lift up on the glove box lever to open it.

Cupholders

Vehicles with cupholders have them located on and behind the center console and in the rear seat armrest. Pull the loop down on the rear seat armrest to access the cupholders.

Pull downward on the cover to access the cupholders behind the center console.

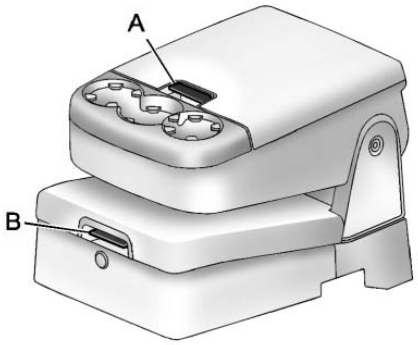
Armrest Storage

Vehicles with a rear seat armrest have two cupholders. Pull the armrest down from the rear seatback to access the cupholders.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Center Console Storage

Vehicles with an upper and lower center console storage area have cupholders included.



Pull the lever (A) up to access the upper storage area. Raise the upper storage bin, then pull the lever (B) up to access the lower storage area. Use the key to lock and unlock the lower storage area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 5-2
Steering Wheel Controls 5-3
Horn 5-5
Windshield Wiper/Washer 5-5
Compass 5-6
Clock 5-8
Power Outlets 5-10
Cigarette Lighter 5-11
Ashtrays 5-12

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-12
Instrument Cluster 5-13
Speedometer 5-16
Odometer 5-16
Trip Odometer 5-16
Tachometer 5-17
Fuel Gauge 5-17
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge 5-18
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-19
Voltmeter Gauge 5-20
Safety Belt Reminders 5-21
Airbag Readiness Light 5-22
Airbag On-Off Light 5-23
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 5-25
Charging System Light 5-26
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-27
Brake System Warning Light 5-29
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-30
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 5-31
Tow/Haul Mode Light 5-31
StabiliTrak® Indicator Light . . . 5-31
Tire Pressure Light 5-32
Engine Oil Pressure Light 5-32
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-33
Security Light 5-33
High-Beam on Light 5-33
Front Fog Lamp Light 5-33
Cruise Control Light 5-34

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) 5-34

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 5-43
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 5-43
Brake System Messages 5-44
Door Ajar Messages 5-45
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-46
Engine Oil Messages 5-47
Engine Power Messages 5-47
Fuel System Messages 5-48
Key and Lock Messages 5-48
Lamp Messages 5-48
Object Detection System Messages 5-48
Ride Control System Messages 5-49
Airbag System Messages 5-50
Anti-Theft Alarm System Messages 5-50
Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-50
Tire Messages 5-51
Transmission Messages 5-52
Vehicle Reminder Messages 5-52
Washer Fluid Messages 5-53

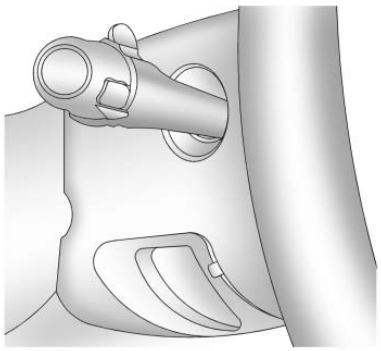
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Personalization
Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) 5-53

Universal Remote System
Universal Remote System . . . 5-61
Universal Remote System Programming 5-61
Universal Remote System Operation 5-66

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



The tilt lever is located on the lower left side of the steering column.

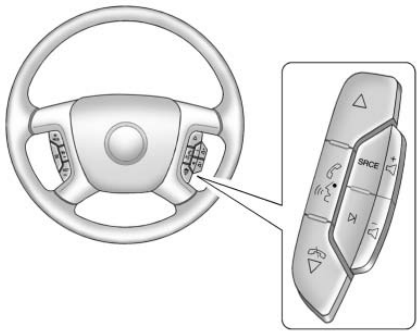
To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering Wheel Controls



For vehicles with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

△ / ▽ **(Next/Previous):** Press to select preset or favorite radio stations, select tracks on a CD/DVD, or navigate an iPod® or USB device.

Radio

To select preset or favorite radio stations:

Press and release △ or ▽ to go to the next or previous radio station stored as a preset or favorite.

CD/DVD

To select tracks on a CD/DVD:

Press and release △ or ▽ to go to the next or previous track.

Selecting Tracks on an iPod or USB Device (Vehicles without a Navigation System)

1. Press and hold △ or ▽ while listening to a song until the contents of the current folder display on the radio display.
2. Press and release △ or ▽ to scroll up or down the list, then press and hold △, or press ▷| to play the highlighted track.

Navigating Folders on an iPod or USB Device (Vehicles without a Navigation System):

1. Press and hold △ or ▽ while listening to a song until the contents of the current folder display on the radio display.
2. Press and hold ▽ to go back to the previous folder list.
3. Press and release △ or ▽ to scroll up or down the list.
   - To select a folder, press and hold △, or press ▷| when the folder is highlighted.
   - To go back further in the folder list, press and hold ▽.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigating an iPod or USB Device on the Main Audio Screen (Vehicles with a Navigation System)

1. Press and release △ or ▽ to select the next or previous track within the selected category.
2. Press and hold △ or ▽ to move quickly through the tracks.
3. Press and release ⏭ to move up one track within the selected category.

Navigating an iPod or USB Device on the Music Navigator Screen (Vehicles with a Navigation System)

1. Press and release △ or ▽ to select the next or previous track within the selected category.
2. Press and hold △ or ▽ to move quickly through the tracks within the selected category.
3. Press and release ⏭ to move up one track within the selected category.

(Mute/Push to Talk): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on.

For vehicles with Bluetooth or OnStar® systems, press and hold for longer than two seconds to interact with those systems. See *Bluetooth on page 7-49* and the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

(End): Press to reject an incoming call, or end a current call.

SRCE (Source/Voice Recognition): Press to switch between the radio and CD, and for equipped vehicles, the DVD, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary.

For vehicles with the navigation system, press and hold this button for longer than one second to initiate voice recognition. See “Voice Recognition” in the Navigation System manual for more information.

⏭ **(Seek):** Press to go to the next radio station while in AM, FM, or XM™.

For vehicles with or without a navigation system:

Press ⏭ to go to the next track or chapter while sourced to the CD or DVD slot.

Press ⏭ to select a track or a folder when navigating folders on an iPod or USB device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For vehicles with a navigation system:

1. Press and hold ⏭ until a beep is heard, to place the radio into SCAN mode. A station will play for five seconds before moving to the next station.
2. To stop the SCAN function, press ⏭ again.

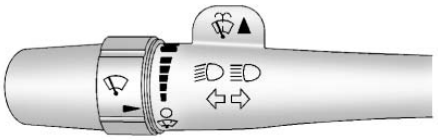
While listening to a CD/DVD, press and hold ⏭ to quickly move forward through the tracks. Release to stop on the desired track.

+ 🔊 – 🔊 (Volume): Press to increase or to decrease the volume.

Horn

To sound the horn, press the center pad on the steering wheel.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



Turn the band with the wiper symbol to control the windshield wipers.

(Mist): Single wipe, turn to , then release. Several wipes, hold the band on longer.

(Off): Turns the windshield wipers off.

(Adjustable Interval Wipes): Turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

(Low Speed): Slow wipes.

(High Speed): Fast wipes.

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-39*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Washer

⚠ WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

(Washer Fluid): Push the paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever, to spray washer fluid on the windshield. The wipers clear the window and then either stop or return to the preset speed.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Compass Zone

The zone is set to zone eight upon leaving the factory. Your dealer will set the correct zone for your location.

Under certain circumstances, such as during a long-distance, cross-country trip or moving to a new state or province, it will be necessary to compensate for compass variance by resetting the zone through the DIC if the zone is not set correctly.

Compass variance is the difference between the earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If the compass is not set to the zone where you live, the compass may give false readings. The compass must be set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is traveling.

To adjust for compass variance, use the following procedure:

Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure

1. Do not set the compass zone when the vehicle is moving. Only set it when the vehicle is in P (Park).

   Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO CHANGE COMPASS ZONE displays. Or, if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, press the trip odometer reset stem until CHANGE COMPASS ZONE displays.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Find the vehicle's current location and variance zone number on the map.

   Zones 1 through 15 are available.

3. Press the set/reset button to scroll through and select the appropriate variance zone.

4. Press the trip/fuel button until the vehicle heading, for example, N for North, is displayed in the DIC. Or, if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for two seconds to select the next available variance zone. Repeat this step until the appropriate variance zone is displayed.

5. If calibration is necessary, calibrate the compass. See “Compass Calibration Procedure” following.

Compass Calibration

The compass can be manually calibrated. Only calibrate the compass in a magnetically clean and safe location, such as an open parking lot, where driving the vehicle in circles is not a danger.

It is suggested to calibrate away from tall buildings, utility wires, manhole covers, or other industrial structures, if possible.

If CAL should ever appear in the DIC display, the compass should be calibrated.

If the DIC display does not show a heading, for example, N for North, or the heading does not change after making turns, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic CB or cell phone antenna mount, a magnetic emergency light, magnetic note pad holder, or any other magnetic item. Turn off the vehicle, move the magnetic item, then turn on the vehicle and calibrate the compass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To calibrate the compass, use the following procedure:

Compass Calibration Procedure

1. Before calibrating the compass, make sure the compass zone is set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is located. See “Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure” earlier in this section.

   Do not operate any switches such as window, sunroof, climate controls, or seats during the calibration procedure.
2. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS displays. Or, if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, press the trip odometer reset stem until CALIBRATE COMPASS displays.
3. Press the set/reset button to start the compass calibration. Or, if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for two seconds to start the compass calibration.
4. The DIC will display CALIBRATING: DRIVE IN CIRCLES. Drive the vehicle in tight circles at less than 8 km/h (5 mph) to complete the calibration. The DIC will display CALIBRATION COMPLETE for a few seconds when the calibration is complete. The DIC display will then return to the previous menu.

Clock

AM-FM Radio and AM-FM Radio with CD Player

To set the clock:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, then press the ⏻ button to turn the radio on.
2. Press the 🕘 button until the hour numbers begin to flash, then turn the ♫ knob to increase or decrease the hour.
3. Press the 🕘 button until the minute numbers begin to flash, then turn the ♫ knob to increase or decrease the minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Press the button until the 12HR or 24HR time format begins to flash, then turn the knob to change the time format.
5. Press the button again until the clock display stops flashing to set the currently displayed time, or wait until the flashing stops after five seconds and the current time displayed automatically sets.

MP3 Radios with a Single CD or a Single CD and DVD Player

To adjust the time and date:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, then press the button to turn the radio on.
2. Press the button to display HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year).
3. Press the softkey located under any one of the tabs to change that setting.
4. To increase the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the softkey below the selected tab.
   - Press the SEEK button.
   - Press the FWD button.
   - Turn the knob clockwise.
5. To decrease the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the SEEK button.
   - Press the REV button.
   - Turn the knob counterclockwise.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year:

1. Press the button and then the softkey located below the forward arrow tab. 12H, 24H, the date MM/DD (month and day), and DD/MM (day and month) displays.
2. Press the softkey located below the desired option.
3. Press the button again to apply the desired option, or let the screen time out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MP3 Radio with a Six-Disc CD Player

To set the time and date:

1. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, then press the ⏻ button to turn the radio on.
2. Press the MENU button and then the softkey under the 🕘 tab to display HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year).
3. Press the softkey located under any one of the tabs to change that setting.
4. To increase the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the softkey below the selected tab.
   - Press the ⏭ SEEK button.
   - Press the ⏩ FWD button.
   - Turn the ♫ knob clockwise.
5. To decrease the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the ⏮ SEEK button.
   - Press the ⏪ REV button.
   - Turn the ♫ knob counterclockwise.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day to day/month:

1. Press the MENU button and then the softkey under the 🕘 tab.
2. Press the softkey located below the forward arrow tab. 12H, 24H, the date MM/DD (month and day), and DD/MM (day and month) displays.
3. Press the softkey located below the desired option.
4. Press the MENU button again to apply the desired option, or let the screen time out.

Power Outlets

Accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone, MP3 player, etc.

The vehicle may have two accessory power outlets located below the climate control system, or may have one accessory power outlet and one cigarette lighter. The cigarette lighter is designed to fit only in the receptacle closest to the driver.

There may be another accessory power outlet in the rear cargo area. If the vehicle has a floor console, there is an accessory power outlet inside the storage bin and one on the rear of the floor console.

Remove the cover to access and replace when not in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The accessory power outlets are powered, even when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF. Continuing to use power outlets while the ignition is in LOCK/OFF may cause the vehicle's battery to run down.

⚠ WARNING

Power is always supplied to the outlets. Do not leave electrical equipment plugged in when the vehicle is not in use because the vehicle could catch fire and cause injury or death.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.**

Certain power accessory plugs may not be compatible to the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-123*.

Notice: **Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.**

Cigarette Lighter

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it is ready for use, the lighter pops back out.

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ashtrays

The vehicle may have a front ashtray located near the center of the instrument panel. Pull on the door to open it. The ashtray may have a cigarette lighter.

Notice: **If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

To remove the ashtray, open the door and pull the ashtray bin toward you. To replace the ashtray, insert the ashtray bin inside the ashtray door and press down until it engages.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

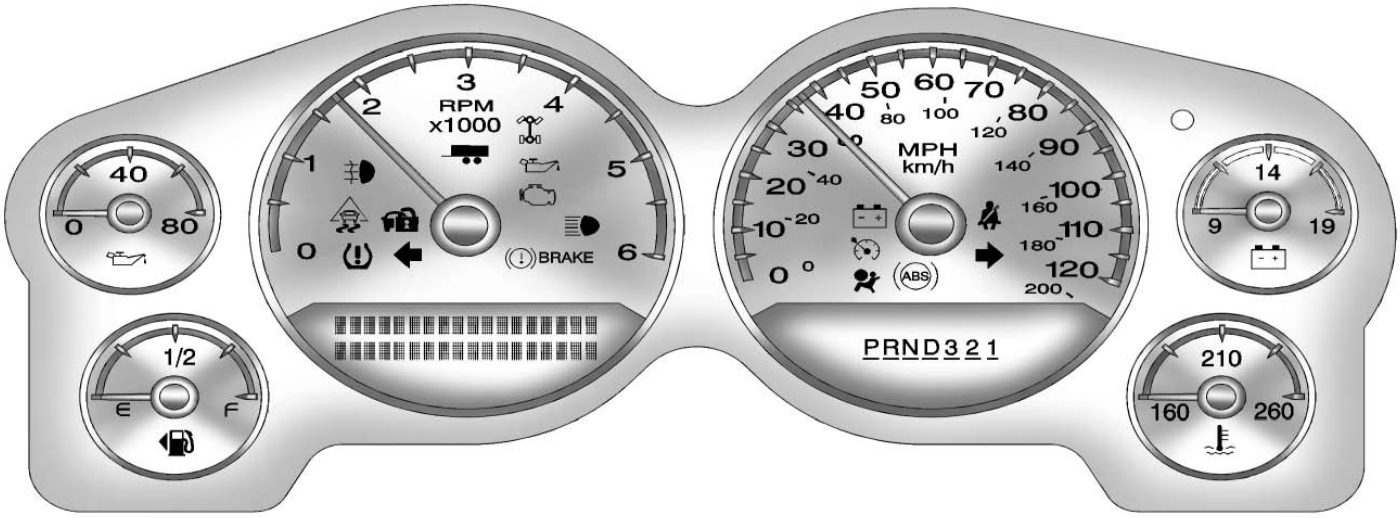
Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

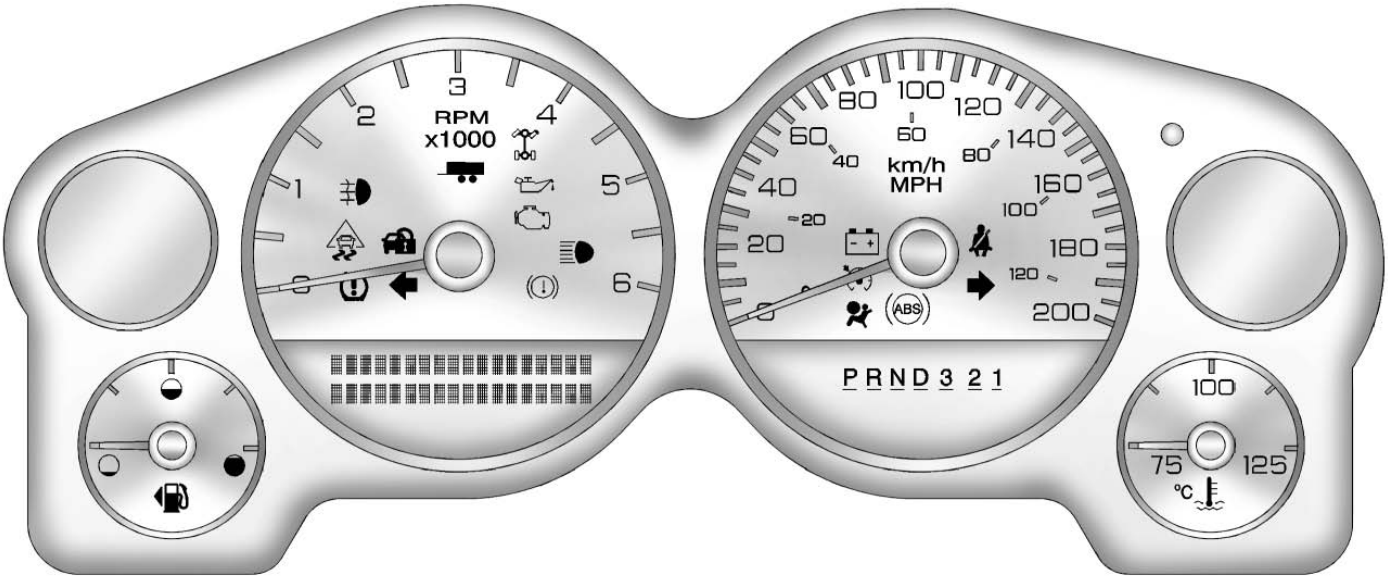
Instrument Cluster



English Light Duty Premium Shown. Metric, Uplevel, Base, Heavy Duty Similar.

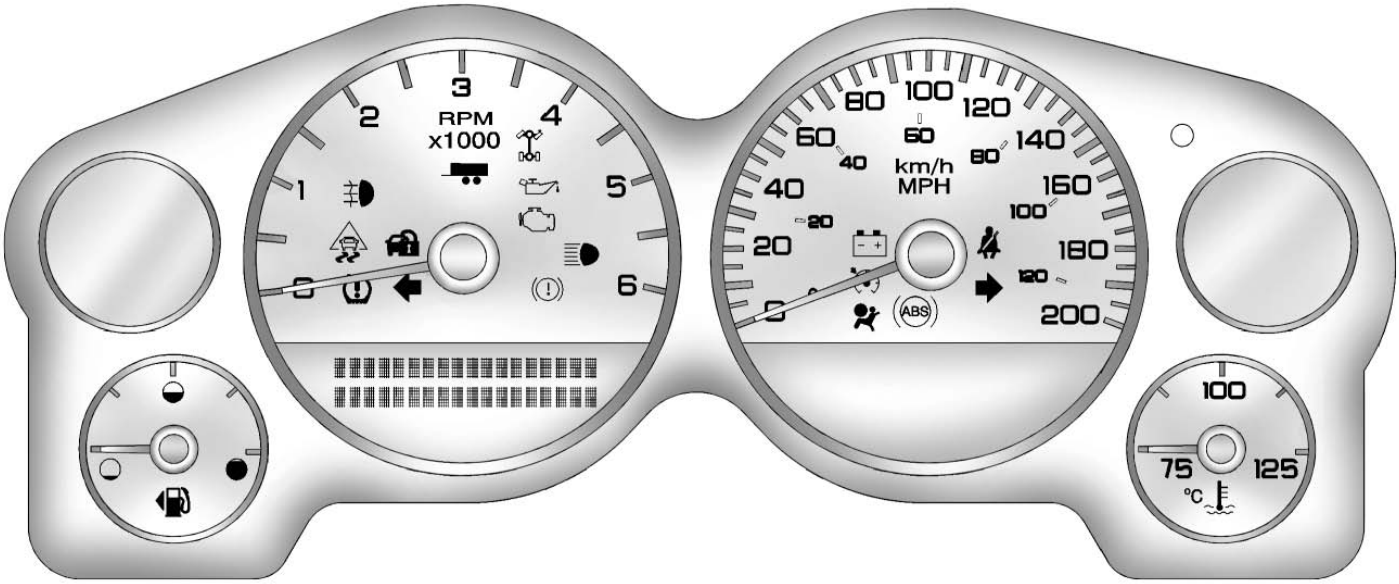
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5-14 Instruments and Controls



Automatic Transmsission Cluster-Mexico Only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Manual Transmission Cluster-Mexico Only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed in both kilometers per hour (km/h) and miles per hour (mph).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

Engine Hour Meter Display

The Driver Information Center (DIC) can also display the number of hours the engine has run. To display the engine hours, turn the ignition off, then press and hold the reset button for at least four seconds. The hour meter displays for up to 30 seconds, or until the ignition is turned on. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* for more information.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last set to zero.

Press the reset button, located on the instrument panel cluster next to the voltmeter, to toggle between the trip odometer and the regular odometer. Holding the reset button for approximately one second while the trip odometer is displayed will reset it.

To display the odometer reading with the ignition off, press the reset button.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* for more information.

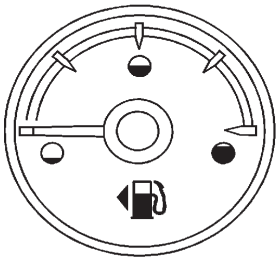
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tachometer

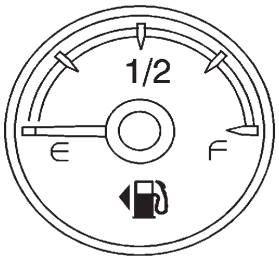
The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). For a description of how Grade Braking affects vehicle speed while the Tow/Haul Mode is activated, see *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49* for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Fuel Gauge



Metric



English

When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge shows about how much fuel is left in the fuel tank.

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

The gauge will first indicate empty before the vehicle is out of fuel, but the vehicle's fuel tank should be filled soon.

When the fuel tank is low the FUEL LEVEL LOW message appears. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-48* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

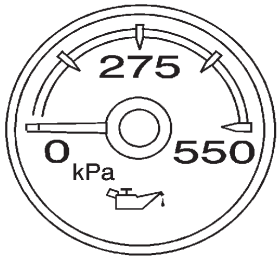
Here are some situations owners can experience with the fuel gauge. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gauge.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the fuel tank's capacity to fill it.
- The gauge goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

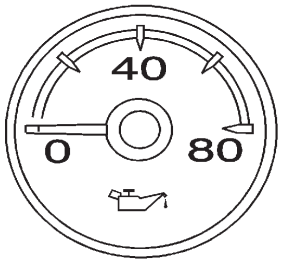
If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Engine Oil Pressure Gauge



Metric



English

For vehicles with an engine oil pressure gauge, it shows the engine oil pressure in kPa (kilopascals) or psi (pounds per square inch) when the engine is running.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Oil pressure can vary with engine speed, outside temperature and oil viscosity, but if readings are outside the normal operating range, the oil pressure light comes on. See *Engine Oil Pressure Light on page 5-32* for more information.

A reading outside the normal operating range can be caused by a dangerously low oil level or some other problem causing low oil pressure. Check the vehicle's oil as soon as possible. See “OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE” under *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-47* and *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.

⚠ WARNING

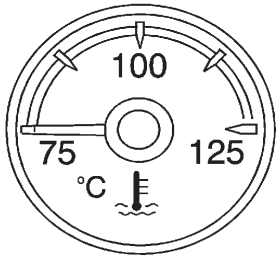
Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.**

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

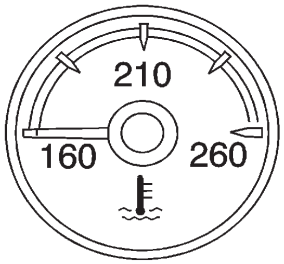
If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Metric

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



English

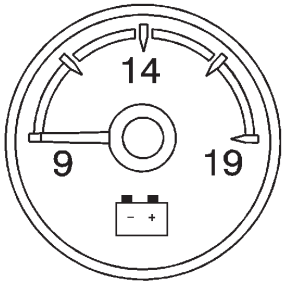
This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

It also provides an indicator of how hard the vehicle is working. During a majority of the operation, the gauge reads 100°C (210°F) or less. If pulling a load or going up hills, it is normal for the temperature to fluctuate and go over the 113°C (235°F) mark. If the gauge reaches the 125°C (260°F) mark, it indicates that the cooling system is working beyond its capacity.

See *Engine Overheating on page 10-24*.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Voltmeter Gauge



For vehicles with a voltmeter gauge, this gauge indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is turned on.

When the ignition is on, this gauge indicates the battery voltage.

When the engine is running, this gauge shows the condition of the charging system. The gauge can transition from a higher to lower or a lower to higher reading. This is normal. If the vehicle is operating outside the normal operating range, the charging system light comes on. See *Charging System Light on page 5-26* for more information. The voltmeter gauge may also read lower when in fuel economy mode. This is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Readings outside the normal operating range can also occur when a large number of electrical accessories are operating in the vehicle and the engine is left idling for an extended period. This condition is normal since the charging system is not able to provide full power at engine idle. As engine speeds are increased, this condition should correct itself as higher engine speeds allow the charging system to create maximum power.

The vehicle can only be driven for a short time with the readings outside the normal operating range. If the vehicle must be driven, turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Readings outside the normal operating range indicate a possible problem in the electrical system. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Safety Belt Reminders

Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds, on vehicles equipped with a radio, to remind the driver to fasten the safety belt, unless the driver safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light flashes for several seconds, then comes on solid for several more.

This chime and light sequence are repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

For vehicles equipped with the passenger safety belt reminder light, several seconds after the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. The passenger safety belt light, located on the overhead console, flashes for several more seconds and then comes on solid for several more.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

The system checks the airbag's electrical system for possible malfunctions. If the light stays on it indicates there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-31*.

The airbag readiness light comes on solid for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message can also come on. See *Airbag System Messages on page 5-50* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag On-Off Light

If the vehicle has an airbag on-off switch, it also has a passenger airbag status indicator located in the overhead console.

United States

Canada and Mexico

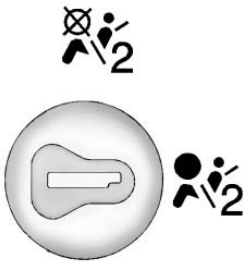
When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will light for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol, will light to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal airbag.

When the right front passenger airbag is manually turned off using the airbag on-off switch in the glove box, the indicator light OFF or the off symbol will come on and stay on as a reminder that the airbag has been turned off. This light will go off when the airbag has been turned on. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information, including important safety information.

United States

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5-24 Instruments and Controls



Canada and Mexico

⚠ WARNING

If the right front passenger's airbag is turned off for a person who is not in a risk group identified by the national government, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Do not turn off the passenger's airbag unless the person sitting there is in a risk group identified by the national government. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more on this, including important safety information.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the right front passenger airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information, including important safety information.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate). See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39* for more information, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the airbag on-off switch. See your dealer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

If the vehicle has one of the indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position unless there is an airbag off switch located in the glove box. If there is an airbag off switch, the vehicle does not have a passenger system system. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-39*.

The passenger airbag status indicator is on the overhead console. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-42* for important safety information.

In addition, if the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, the label on the vehicle's sun visor refers to “ADVANCED AIRBAGS”.

United States

Canada and Mexico

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light

This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

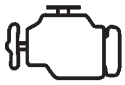
The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. A charging system message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) can also appear. See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-43* for more information. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



This light should come on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3*.**

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5-28 Instruments and Controls

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

An emission system malfunction might be corrected:

- Make sure the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-88*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- If the vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle of water, the vehicle's electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Make sure to fuel the vehicle with quality fuel. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and can cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

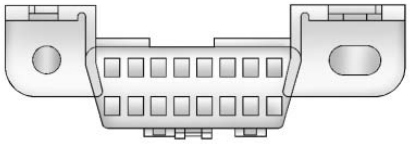
  See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-84*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments may have programs to inspect the on-vehicle emission control equipment. For the inspection, the emission system test equipment is connected to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The malfunction indicator lamp is on with the engine running, or if the light does not come on when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN while the engine is off.
- The critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. This can happen if the battery has recently been replaced or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system evaluates critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Brake System Warning Light

With the ignition on, the brake system warning light comes on when the parking brake is set. If the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged, a chime sounds when the vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working

If the warning light comes on and a chime sounds there could be a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light can also come on due to low brake fluid. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-30* for more information.

Metric **English**

This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it is ready to warn if there is a problem.

⚠ WARNING

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The pedal might be harder to push or might go closer to the floor. It can take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

For vehicles with the Antilock Brake System (ABS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.

For vehicles with a Driver Information Center (DIC), see *Brake System Messages on page 5-44* for all brake related DIC messages.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Four-Wheel-Drive Light

For vehicles equipped with the four-wheel-drive light, it comes on when a vehicle with a manual transfer case is shifted into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages.

Some delay between the shifting and the light coming on is normal.

See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53* for more information.

Tow/Haul Mode Light

For vehicles with the Tow/Haul Mode feature, this light comes on when the Tow/Haul Mode has been activated.

For more information, see *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49*.

StabiliTrak® Indicator Light

For vehicles with the StabiliTrak system, this light comes on briefly while starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the StabiliTrak system and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the StabiliTrak system is off and does not limit wheel spin.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70* for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with a Tire Pressure Monitor System, this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the Tire Pressure Monitor System.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message can accompany the light. See *Tire Messages on page 5-51* for more information. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information Label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* for more information.

When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

This indicates that there may be a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about a minute and stays on steady for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence repeats with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-67* for more information.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ WARNING

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Low Fuel Warning Light

This light, under the fuel gauge, comes on briefly while the engine is being started.

This light and a chime, if the vehicle is equipped with a radio, comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The Driver Information Center also displays a “FUEL LEVEL LOW” message. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-48* for more information. When fuel is added this light and message should go off. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

Security Light

For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Anti-Theft Alarm System on page 2-12*.

High-Beam on Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-3* for more information.

Front Fog Lamp Light

For vehicles equipped with fog lamps, this light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 6-6* for more information.

Cruise Control Light

For vehicles equipped with cruise control, this light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 9-73* for more information.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC).

The DIC displays information about this vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected.

All messages will appear in the DIC display located below the tachometer in the instrument panel cluster.

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

The DIC has different displays which can be accessed by pressing the DIC buttons located on the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel. If the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, the trip odometer reset stem can be used to access some of the menu items.

The DIC displays trip, fuel, and vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected.

The DIC also allows some features to be customized. See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIC Buttons

The buttons are the trip/fuel, vehicle information, customization, and set/reset buttons. The button functions are detailed in the following pages.

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometer, fuel range, average economy, fuel used, timer, transmission temperature, and instantaneous economy and Active Fuel Management™ indicator.

The compass and outside temperature will also be shown in the display. The temperature will be shown in °C or °F depending on the units selected.

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to display the oil life, units, tire pressure readings for vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), trailer brake gain and output information for vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, engine hours, compass zone setting, and compass recalibration.

(Customization): Press this button to customize the feature settings on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53* for more information.

✓ **(Set/Reset):** Press this button to set or reset certain functions and to turn off or acknowledge messages on the DIC.

Trip/Fuel Menu Items (with DIC Buttons)

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Odometer

Press the trip/fuel button until ODOMETER displays. This display shows the distance the vehicle has been driven in either kilometers (km) or miles. Pressing the trip odometer reset stem will also display the odometer.

To switch between metric and English measurements, see “Units” later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip Odometer

Press the trip/fuel button until TRIP displays. This display shows the current distance traveled in either kilometers (km) or miles since the last reset for the trip odometer. Pressing the trip odometer reset stem will also display the trip odometer.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the set/reset button while the trip odometer is displayed. You can also reset the trip odometer while it is displayed by pressing and holding the trip odometer reset stem.

The trip odometer has a feature called the retro-active reset. This can be used to set the trip odometer to the number of miles (kilometers) driven since the ignition was last turned on. This can be used if the trip odometer is not reset at the beginning of the trip.

To use the retro-active reset feature, press and hold the set/reset button for at least four seconds. The trip odometer will display the number of kilometers (km) or miles driven since the ignition was last turned on and the vehicle was moving. Once the vehicle begins moving, the trip odometer will accumulate mileage. For example, if the vehicle was driven 8 km (5 miles) before it is started again, and then the retro-active reset feature is activated, the display will show 8 km (5 miles). As the vehicle begins moving, the display will then increase to 8.2 km (5.1 miles), 8.4 km (5.2 miles), etc.

Fuel Range

Press the trip/fuel button until FUEL RANGE displays. This display shows the approximate number of remaining kilometers (km) or miles the vehicle can be driven without refueling. The display will show LOW if the fuel level is low.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This estimate will change if driving conditions change. For example, if driving in traffic and making frequent stops, this display may read one number, but if the vehicle is driven on a freeway, the number may change even though the same amount of fuel is in the fuel tank. This is because different driving conditions produce different fuel economies. Generally, freeway driving produces better fuel economy than city driving.
Fuel range cannot be reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Average Economy

Press the trip/fuel button until AVG ECONOMY displays. This display shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. To reset AVG ECONOMY, press and hold the set/reset button.

Fuel Used

Press the trip/fuel button until FUEL USED displays. This display shows the number of liters (L) or gallons (gal) of fuel used since the last reset of this menu item. To reset the fuel used information, press and hold the set/reset button while FUEL USED is displayed.

Timer

Press the trip/fuel button until TIMER displays. This display can be used as a timer.

To start the timer, press the set/reset button while TIMER is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero.

To stop the timer, press the set/reset button briefly while TIMER is displayed.

To reset the timer to zero, press and hold the set/reset button while TIMER is displayed.

Transmission Temperature

Press the trip/fuel button until TRANS TEMP displays. This display shows the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid in either degrees Celsius (°C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F).

Instantaneous Economy and Active Fuel Management™ Indicator

If the vehicle has this display, press the trip/fuel button until INST ECON V8 displays. This display shows the current fuel economy at a particular moment and will change frequently as driving conditions change. This display shows the instantaneous fuel economy in liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). Unlike average economy, this screen cannot be reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

An Active Fuel Management indicator displays on the right side of the DIC, while INST ECON displays on the left side. Active Fuel Management allows the engine to operate on either four or eight cylinders, depending on driving demands. When Active Fuel Management is active, V4 will display on the DIC. When Active Fuel Management is inactive, V8 will display. See *Active Fuel Management™ on page 9-41* for more information.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Vehicle Information Menu Items (with DIC Buttons)

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Oil Life

Press the vehicle information button until OIL LIFE REMAINING displays. This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If you see 99% OIL LIFE REMAINING on the display, that means 99% of the current oil life remains. The engine oil life system will alert you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See “CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON” under *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-47*. You should change the oil as soon as you can. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information.

Remember, you must reset the OIL LIFE display after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Units

Press the vehicle information button until UNITS displays. This display allows you to select between metric or English units of measurement. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between METRIC or ENGLISH units. All of the vehicle information will then be displayed in the unit of measurement selected.

Tire Pressure

If the vehicle has the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), the pressure for each tire can be viewed in the DIC. The tire pressure will be shown in either kilopascals (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi). Press the vehicle information button until the DIC displays FRONT TIRES kPa (PSI) LEFT ## RIGHT ##. Press the vehicle information button again until the DIC displays REAR TIRES kPa (PSI) LEFT ## RIGHT ##.

If a low tire pressure condition is detected by the system while driving, a message advising you to add pressure in a specific tire will appear in the display. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Tire Messages on page 5-51* for more information.

If the tire pressure display shows dashes instead of a value, there may be a problem with the vehicle. If this consistently occurs, see your dealer for service.

Trailer Gain and Output

On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, the trailer brake display appears in the DIC. Press the vehicle information button until TRAILER GAIN and OUTPUT display.

TRAILER GAIN shows the trailer gain setting. This setting can be adjusted from 0.0 to 10.0 with either a trailer connected or disconnected.

OUTPUT shows the power output to the trailer any time a trailer with electric brakes is connected. Output is displayed in 0 to 10 bars. Dashes may appear in the OUTPUT display.

To adjust trailer gain see “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Hours

Press the vehicle information button until ENGINE HOURS displays. This display shows the total number of hours the engine has run.

Compass Zone Setting

This display allows for setting the compass zone. See *Compass on page 5-6* for more information.

Compass Recalibration

This display allows for calibrating the compass. See *Compass on page 5-6* for more information.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Trip Odometer Reset Stem Menu Items (with DIC Buttons)

Use the trip odometer reset stem to view the odometer and trip odometer. The Language selection and Engine Hours display can also be accessed with the trip odometer reset stem.

Odometer

Press the trip odometer reset stem until ODOMETER displays. This display shows the distance the vehicle has been driven in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi).

Trip Odometer

Press the trip odometer reset stem until TRIP displays. This display shows the current distance traveled in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi) since the last reset for the trip odometer.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing and holding the trip odometer reset stem while the trip odometer is displayed.

The trip odometer has a feature called the retro-active reset. This can be used to set the trip odometer to the number of miles (kilometers) driven since the ignition was last turned on. This can be used if the trip odometer is not reset at the beginning of the trip.

To use the retro-active reset feature, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for at least four seconds. The trip odometer will display the number of kilometers (km) or miles (mi) driven since the ignition was last turned on and the vehicle was moving. Once the vehicle begins moving, the trip odometer will accumulate mileage. For example, if the vehicle was driven 8 km (5 miles) before it is started again, and then the retro-active reset feature is activated, the display will show 8 km (5 miles). As the vehicle begins moving, the display will then increase to 8.2 km (5.1 miles), 8.4 km (5.2 miles), etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Language

This display allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear. To select a language:

1. Press the trip odometer reset stem until ODOMETER displays.
2. While in the ODOMETER display, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for three seconds until the currently set language displays.
3. Continue to press and hold the trip odometer reset stem to scroll through all of the available languages.

   The available selections are ENGLISH (default), FRANCAIS (French), ESPANOL (Spanish), and NO CHANGE.
4. Once the desired language is displayed, release the trip odometer reset stem to set the choice.

Engine Hours

To display the ENGINE HOURS, place the ignition in LOCK/OFF or ACC/ACCESSORY, then press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for four seconds while viewing the ODOMETER. This display shows the total number of hours the engine has run.

Trip Odometer Reset Stem Menu Items (without DIC Buttons)

Language

This display allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear. To select a language:

1. Press the trip odometer reset stem until ODOMETER displays.
2. While in the ODOMETER display, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for three seconds until the currently set language displays.
3. Continue to press and hold the trip odometer reset stem to scroll through all of the available languages.

   The available languages are ENGLISH (default), FRANCAIS (French), ESPANOL (Spanish), and NO CHANGE.
4. Once the desired language is displayed, release the trip odometer reset stem to set the choice.

Trip Odometer

Press the trip odometer reset stem until TRIP displays. This display shows the current distance traveled in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi) since the last reset for the trip odometer.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing and holding the trip odometer reset stem while the trip odometer is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The trip odometer has a feature called the retro-active reset. This can be used to set the trip odometer to the number of miles (kilometers) driven since the ignition was last turned on. This can be used if the trip odometer is not reset at the beginning of the trip.

To use the retro-active reset feature, press and hold the trip odometer reset stem for at least four seconds. The trip odometer will display the number of kilometers (km) or miles (mi) driven since the ignition was last turned on and the vehicle was moving. Once the vehicle begins moving, the trip odometer will accumulate mileage. For example, if the vehicle was driven 8 km (5 miles) before it is started again, and then the retro-active reset feature is activated, the display will show 8 km (5 miles). As the vehicle begins moving, the display will then increase to 8.2 km (5.1 miles), 8.4 km (5.2 miles), etc.

Transmission Temperature

Press the trip odometer reset stem until TRANS TEMP displays. This display shows the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid in either degrees Celsius (°C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F) .

Trailer Gain and Output

On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, the trailer brake display appears in the DIC. Press the trip odometer reset stem until TRAILER GAIN and OUTPUT display.

TRAILER GAIN shows the trailer gain setting. This setting can be adjusted from 0.0 to 10.0 with either a trailer connected or disconnected.

OUTPUT shows the power output to the trailer any time a trailer with electric brakes is connected. Output is displayed in 0 to 10 bars. Dashes may appear in the OUTPUT display.

To adjust trailer gain see “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Compass Zone Setting

This display allows for setting the compass zone. See *Compass on page 5-6* for more information.

Compass Recalibration

This display allows for calibrating the compass. See *Compass on page 5-6* for more information.

Oil Life

To access this display, the vehicle must be in P (Park). Press the trip odometer reset stem until OIL LIFE REMAINING displays. This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If you see 99% OIL LIFE REMAINING on the display, that means 99% of the current oil life remains. The engine oil life system will alert you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See “CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON” under *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-47*. You should change the oil as soon as you can. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information.

Remember, you must reset the OIL LIFE display after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing ✓ (Set/Reset) or the trip odometer reset stem.

The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously and clearing the message does not correct the problem.

The following are the possible messages and some information about them.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

BATTERY LOW START VEHICLE

When the vehicle’s battery is severely discharged, this message will display and four chimes will sound. Start the vehicle immediately. If the vehicle is not started and the battery continues to discharge, the climate controls, heated seats, and audio systems will shut off and the vehicle may require a jump start. These systems will function again after the vehicle is started.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

On some vehicles, this message displays if there is a problem with the battery charging system. Under certain conditions, the charging system light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Charging System Light on page 5-26*. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Have the electrical system checked as soon as possible. See your dealer.

Brake System Messages

SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

This message displays along with the brake system warning light if there is a problem with the brake system. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service as soon as possible. See your dealer.

SERVICE BRAKES SOON

On some vehicles, this message displays if there is a problem with the brake system. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service. See your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM

On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, this message displays and a chime may sound when there is a problem with the ITBC system.

When this message displays, power is no longer available to the trailer brakes.

As soon as it is safe to do so, carefully pull your vehicle over to the side of the road and turn the ignition off. Check the wiring connection to the trailer and turn the ignition back on. If this message still displays, either your vehicle or the trailer needs service. See your dealer.

See “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-94* for more information.

Door Ajar Messages

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime may sound if the driver door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

HOOD OPEN

This message displays and a chime may sound if the hood is not fully closed. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the hood for obstructions, and close the hood again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN (Crew Cab)

This message displays and a chime may sound if the driver side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message displays and a chime may sound if the front passenger door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN (Crew Cab)

This message displays and a chime may sound if the passenger side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstructions, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

Engine Cooling System Messages

ENGINE HOT A/C (Air Conditioning) TURNED OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-19*. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive the vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-24* for more information.**

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-19*.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 10-26* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive the vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-24* for more information.**

This message displays and a chime may sound if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9* for information on how to reset the message. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information.

ENGINE OIL HOT IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine oil becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-19*.

OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive the vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7* for more information.**

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays and a chime may sound when the cooling system temperature gets too hot and the engine further enters the engine coolant protection mode. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-24* for more information.

This message also displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel System Messages

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays and a chime may sound if the fuel level is low. Refuel as soon as possible. See *Fuel Gauge on page 5-17* and *Fuel on page 9-83* for more information.

TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message may display along with the check engine light on the instrument panel cluster if the vehicle's fuel cap is not tightened properly. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*. Reinstall the fuel cap fully. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-88*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn this light and message off.

Key and Lock Messages

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays if a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter battery is low. The battery needs to be replaced in the transmitter. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Lamp Messages

TURN SIGNAL ON

This message displays and a chime sounds if a turn signal is left on for 1.2 km (0.75 mile). Move the turn signal/multifunction lever to the off position.

Object Detection System Messages

PARK ASST BLOCKED SEE OWNERS MANUAL

If the vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, this message displays if there is something interfering with the park assist system. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76* for more information.

PARK ASSIST OFF

If the vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, after the vehicle has been started, this message displays to remind the driver that the URPA system has been turned off. Press the set/reset button or the trip odometer reset stem to acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display. To turn the URPA system back on, see *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE PARK ASSIST

If the vehicle has the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, this message displays if there is a problem with the URPA system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76* for more information. See your dealer for service.

Ride Control System Messages

SERVICE STABILITRAK

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak and this message displays, it means there may be a problem with the StabiliTrak system. If you see this message, try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine for at least 15 seconds; then start the engine again. If this message still comes on, it means there is a problem. You should see your dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive; however, you do not have the benefit of StabiliTrak, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message displays, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer for service. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70* for more information.

STABILITRAK OFF

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when you turn off StabiliTrak, or when the stability control has been automatically disabled. To limit wheel spin and realize the full benefits of the stability enhancement system, you should normally leave StabiliTrak on. However, you should turn StabiliTrak off if your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow and you want to rock your vehicle to attempt to free it, or if you are driving in extreme off-road conditions and require more wheel spin. See *If the Vehicle is Stuck on page 9-22*. To turn the StabiliTrak system on or off, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There are several conditions that can cause this message to appear.

- If the vehicle is overheating, which could occur if StabiliTrak activates continuously for an extended period of time.
- If the brake system warning light is on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.
- If the stability system takes longer than usual to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions.
- If an engine or vehicle related problem has been detected and the vehicle needs service. See your dealer.
- If the vehicle is shifted into 4LO.

The message turns off as soon as the conditions that caused the message to be displayed are no longer present.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak, this message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70* for more information.

Airbag System Messages

SERVICE AIR BAG

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Have your dealer inspect the system for problems. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-22* and *Airbag System on page 3-31* for more information.

Anti-Theft Alarm System Messages

SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the theft-deterrent system. The vehicle may or may not restart so you may want to take the vehicle to your dealer before turning off the engine. See *Immobilizer Operation on page 2-14* for more information.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

FAST IDLE ON

If your vehicle has this feature, this message displays when the fast idle feature is on. See *Fast Idle System on page 9-37* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Messages

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

If the vehicle has the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the system is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 5-32*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-67* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

If the vehicle has the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the system is re-learning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be re-learned after rotating the tires or after replacing a tire or sensor. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71*, *Tire Rotation on page 10-71*, *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-65*, and *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* for more information.

TIRE LOW ADD AIR TO TIRE

If the vehicle has the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires is low. This message also displays LEFT FRT (left front), RIGHT FRT (right front), LEFT RR (left rear), or RIGHT RR (right rear) to indicate the location of the low tire. The low tire pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 5-32*. You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. To read the other messages that may have been sent at the same time, press the set/reset button or the trip odometer reset stem. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 10-55*, *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*, and *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmission Messages

SERVICE 4 WHEEL DRIVE

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive, this message may display if a problem occurs with the four-wheel-drive system. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Make sure the key is in the LOCK/OFF position for at least one minute and then restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the four-wheel-drive system needs service. See your dealer.

TRANSMISSION HOT IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive the vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by the warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while the transmission temperature warning is displayed.**

This message displays and a chime may sound if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears and the chime stops when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

CHECK TRAILER WIRING

On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, this message may display and a chime may sound when one of the following conditions exists:

- A trailer with electric brakes becomes disconnected from the vehicle.
  - If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is stopped, this message clears itself after a short time.
  - If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is moving, this message stays on until the ignition is turned off.
- There is a short in the wiring to the electric trailer brakes.

When this message displays, power is no longer available to the trailer brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As soon as it is safe to do so, carefully pull the vehicle over to the side of the road and turn the ignition off. Check the wiring connection to the trailer and turn the ignition back on. This message clears if the trailer is reconnected. This message also clears if you acknowledge it. If this message still displays, either the vehicle or the trailer needs service. See your dealer.

See “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

TRAILER CONNECTED

On vehicles with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, this message displays briefly when a trailer with electric brakes is first connected to the vehicle.

This message clears itself after several seconds. This message also clears if you acknowledge it. After this message clears, the TRAILER GAIN/OUTPUT display appears in the DIC.

See “TRAILER GAIN/OUTPUT” under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* and “Integrated Trailer Brake Control System” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Washer Fluid Messages

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message displays when the windshield washer fluid is low. Fill the windshield washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the windshield washer fluid reservoir. Also, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-28* for more information.

Vehicle Personalization

Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons)

The vehicle may have customization capabilities that allow you to program certain features to one preferred setting. Customization features can only be programmed to one setting on the vehicle and cannot be programmed to a preferred setting for two different drivers.

All of the customization options may not be available on the vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on the DIC.

The default settings for the customization features were set when the vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

The customization preferences are automatically recalled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To change customization preferences, use the following procedure.

Entering the Feature Settings Menu

1. Turn the ignition on and place the vehicle in P (Park).

   To avoid excessive drain on the battery, turn the headlamps off.

2. Press the customization button to scroll through the available customizable options.

Feature Settings Menu Items

The following customization features allow you to program settings to the vehicle:

DISPLAY IN ENGLISH

This feature will only display if a language other than English has been set. This feature allows you to change the language in which the DIC messages appear to English.

Press the customization button until the PRESS ✓ TO DISPLAY IN ENGLISH screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to display all DIC messages in English.

DISPLAY LANGUAGE

This feature allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear.

Press the customization button until the DISPLAY LANGUAGE screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

ENGLISH (default): All messages will appear in English.

FRANCAIS: All messages will appear in French.

ESPANOL: All messages will appear in Spanish.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

You can also change the language by pressing the trip odometer reset stem. See “Language” under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTO DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select when the vehicle's doors will automatically lock. See *Automatic Door Locks on page 2-9* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

SHIFT OUT OF PARK (default): The doors will automatically lock when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

AT VEHICLE SPEED: The doors will automatically lock when the vehicle speed is above 13 km/h (8 mph) for three seconds.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

AUTO DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to turn off the automatic door unlocking feature. It also allows you to select which doors and when the doors will automatically unlock. See *Automatic Door Locks on page 2-9* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: None of the doors will automatically unlock.

DRIVER AT KEY OUT: Only the driver door will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

DRIVER IN PARK: Only the driver door will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) .

ALL AT KEY OUT: All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

ALL IN PARK (default): All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback received when locking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no feedback when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ONLY: The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN ONLY: The horn will sound on the second press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN & LIGHTS (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter, and the horn will sound when the lock button is pressed again within five seconds of the previous command.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback received when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

LIGHTS OFF: The exterior lamps will not flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIGHTS ON (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

DELAY DOOR LOCK

On vehicles with a crew cab, this feature turns the delayed door locks on or off. When locking the doors with the power door lock switch and a door is open, this feature will delay locking the doors until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use. The key must be out of the ignition for this feature to work. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the power door lock switch twice. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-9* for more information.

Press the customization button until DELAY DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: There will be no delayed locking of the vehicle's doors.

ON (default): The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door is closed.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EXIT LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select the amount of time you want the exterior lamps to remain on when it is dark enough outside. This happens after the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF.

Press the customization button until EXIT LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lamps will not turn on.

30 SECONDS (default): The exterior lamps will stay on for 30 seconds.

1 MINUTE: The exterior lamps will stay on for one minute.

2 MINUTES: The exterior lamps will stay on for two minutes.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

APPROACH LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select if the exterior lights turn on briefly during low light periods after unlocking the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Press the customization button until APPROACH LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lights will not turn on when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

ON (default): If it is dark enough outside, the exterior lights will turn on briefly when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

The lights will remain on for 20 seconds, until the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or until the vehicle is no longer off. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3* for more information.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

CHIME VOLUME

If available, this feature allows you to select the volume level of the chime.

Press the customization button until CHIME VOLUME appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

NORMAL: The chime volume will be set to a normal level.

LOUD: The chime volume will be set to a loud level.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

There is no default for chime volume. The volume will stay at the last known setting.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

PARK TILT MIRRORS

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select if the outside mirror(s) will automatically tilt down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). See *Park Tilt Mirrors on page 2-19* for more information.

Press the customization button until PARK TILT MIRRORS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVER MIRROR: The driver outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

PASSENGER MIRROR: The passenger outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

BOTH MIRRORS: The driver and passenger outside mirrors will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EASY EXIT RECALL

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select your preference for the automatic easy exit seat feature. See “Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals” in *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT RECALL appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

DOOR BUTTON ONLY: No automatic seat exit recall will occur. The recall will only occur after pressing the easy exit seat button.

BUTTON & KEY OUT (default): If the features are enabled through the EASY EXIT SETUP menu, the driver seat will move back when the key is removed from the ignition or the easy exit seat button is pressed.

The automatic easy exit seat movement will only occur one time after the key is removed from the ignition. If the automatic movement has already occurred, and you put the key back in the ignition and remove it again, the seat will stay in the original exit position, unless a memory recall took place prior to removing the key again.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EASY EXIT SETUP

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select which areas will recall with the automatic easy exit seat feature. It also allows you to turn off the automatic easy exit feature. See “Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals” in *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* and “EASY EXIT RECALL” earlier for more information.

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT SETUP appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the menu up/down button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: No automatic seat exit will recall.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEAT ONLY (default): The driver seat will recall.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

MEMORY SEAT RECALL

If the vehicle has this feature, it allows you to select your preference for the remote memory seat recall feature. See “Memory Seat, Mirrors, and Pedals” in *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until MEMORY SEAT RECALL appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF (default): No remote memory seat recall will occur.

ON: The driver seat and, on some vehicles, the outside mirrors will automatically move to the stored driving position when the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed. On some vehicles with the adjustable throttle and brake pedal feature, the pedals will also automatically move.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

FACTORY SETTINGS

This feature allows you to set all of the customization features back to their factory default settings.

Press the customization button until FACTORY SETTINGS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

RESTORE ALL (default): The customization features will be set to their factory default settings.

DO NOT RESTORE: The customization features will not be set to their factory default settings.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS

This feature allows you to exit the feature settings menu.

Press the customization button until PRESS ✓ TO EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS appears in the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to exit the menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you do not exit, pressing the customization button again will return you to the beginning of the feature settings menu.

Exiting the Feature Settings Menu

The feature settings menu will be exited when any of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is no longer in ON/RUN.
- The trip/fuel or vehicle information DIC buttons are pressed.
- The end of the feature settings menu is reached and exited.
- A 40-second time period has elapsed with no selection made.

Universal Remote System

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-18* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Universal Remote System Programming

This vehicle may have the Universal Remote System.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist with programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as for future programming. Only the original remote control transmitter is needed for Fixed Code programming.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” in this section.

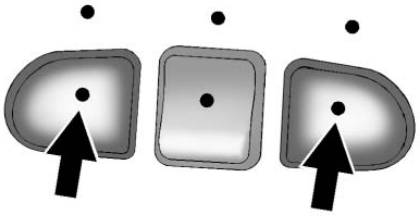
Park the vehicle outside of the garage when programming a garage door. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate that is being programmed.

Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

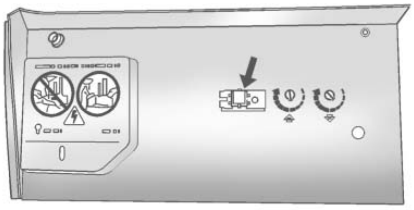
Most garage door openers sold after 1996 are Rolling Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.



To program up to three devices:

1. From inside the vehicle, press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.



2. In the garage, locate the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Find the “Learn” or “Smart” button. It can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit and may be a colored button. Press this button. After pressing this button, complete the following steps in less than 30 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Immediately return to the vehicle. Press and hold the Universal Home Remote button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 20 seconds.
4. Immediately, within one second, release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Rolling Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1 through 5, choosing a different function button in Step 3 than what was used for the garage door opener.

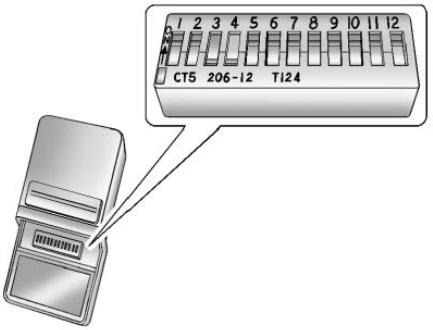
If these instructions do not work, the garage door opener is probably a Fixed Code unit. Follow the programming instructions that follow for a Fixed Code garage door opener.

Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold before 1996 are Fixed Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.



To program up to three devices:

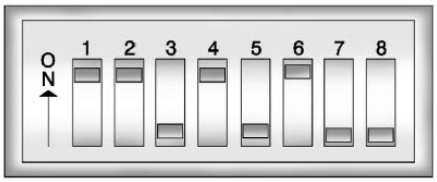
1. To verify that the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit, remove the battery cover on the hand-held transmitter supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener motor. If there is a row of dip switches similar to the graphic above, the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit. If you do not see a row of dip switches, return to the previous section for Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

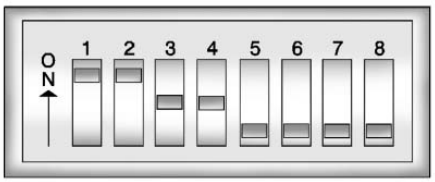
5-64 Instruments and Controls

Your hand-held transmitter can have between 8 to 12 dip switches depending on the brand of transmitter.

The garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) could also have a row of dip switches that can be used when programming the Universal Home Remote. If the total number of switches on the motor head and hand-held transmitter are different, or if the dip switch settings are different, use the dip switch settings on the motor head unit to program the Universal Home Remote. The motor head dip switch settings can also be used when the original hand-held transmitter is not available.



Example of Eight Dip Switches with Two Positions



Example of Eight Dip Switches with Three Positions

The panel of switches might not appear exactly as they do in the examples above, but they should be similar.

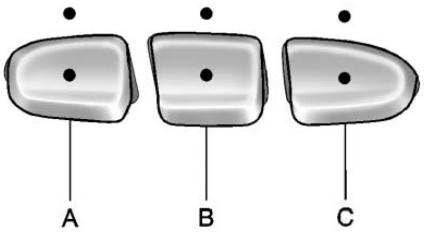
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The switch positions on the hand-held transmitter could be labeled as follows:

- A switch in the up position could be labeled as “Up,” “+,” or “On.”
- A switch in the down position could be labeled as “Down,” “−,” or “Off.”
- A switch in the middle position could be labeled as “Middle,” “0,” or “Neutral.”

2. Write down the 8 to 12 switch settings from left to right as follows:
   - When a switch is in the up position, write “Left.”
   - When a switch is in the down position, write “Right.”
   - If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “Middle.”

   The switch settings written down in Step 2 now become the button strokes to be entered into the Universal Home Remote in Step 4. Be sure to enter the switch settings written down in Step 2, in order from left to right, into the Universal Home Remote, when completing Step 4.
3. From inside your vehicle, first firmly press all three buttons at the same time for about three seconds. Release the buttons to put the Universal Home Remote into programming mode.



A. Left Button

B. Middle Button

C. Right Button

4. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Enter each switch setting from Step 2 into your vehicle's Universal Home Remote. You will have two and one-half minutes to complete Step 4. Now press one button on the Universal Home Remote for each switch setting as follows:
   - If you wrote “Left,” press the left button (A) in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If you wrote “Right,” press the right button (C) in the vehicle.
- If you wrote “Middle,” press the middle button (B) in the vehicle.

5. After entering all of the switch positions, once again firmly press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
6. Press and hold the button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 55 seconds.
7. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
8. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Fixed Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-8, choosing a different button in Step 6 than what was used for the garage door opener.

Universal Remote System Operation

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons

Any of the three buttons can be reprogrammed by repeating the instructions.

Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends.

To erase either Rolling Code or Fixed Code settings on the Universal Home Remote device:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all buttons will be erased.

For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 13-4*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-3
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-3
Flash-to-Pass 6-3
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-4
Automatic Headlamp System 6-4
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-5
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-6
Fog Lamps 6-6
Auxiliary Roof-Mounted Lamp 6-7

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-7
Cargo Lamp 6-8
Dome Lamps 6-8
Reading Lamps 6-8

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 6-9
Exit Lighting 6-9
Battery Load Management 6-9
Battery Power Protection 6-10

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6-2 Lighting

It controls the following systems:

- Headlamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

The exterior lamps control has four positions:

(Off): Turns off the automatic headlamps and daytime running lamps (DRL). Turn the headlamp control to the off position again to turn the automatic headlamps or DRL back on.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, the off position will only work when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

AUTO (Automatic): Automatically turns on the headlamps at normal brightness, together with the following:

- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

When the vehicle is turned off and the headlamps are in AUTO, the headlamps may automatically remain on for a set time. The time of the delay can be changed using the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the following:

- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is on, the headlamps turn off automatically 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is off, the headlamps will stay on for 10 minutes before automatically turning off to prevent the battery from being drained. Turn the headlamp control to off and then back to the headlamp on position to make the headlamps stay on for an additional 10 minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Push the turn signal/multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to change the headlamps from low beam to high beam.

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

For vehicles with a radio, a reminder chime sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on, the ignition is off, and a door is open. To disable the chime, turn the lamp off.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer): Push the lever toward the instrument panel, to change the headlamps from low to high beam.

Pull the multifunction lever toward you and release it, to return to low-beam headlamps.

When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if the headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If the headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system comes on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The transmission is not in Park.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL system is on, only the DRL lamps are on. The taillamps, sidemarker, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system switches from DRL to the headlamps.

To turn off the DRL lamps, turn the exterior lamps control to the OFF position and then release. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the transmission must be in the P (Park) position before the DRL lamps can be turned off.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system turns on the headlamps at the normal brightness, along with the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamps switch to the off position and then release it. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the transmission must be in the P (Park) position before the automatic headlamp system can be turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel in the defroster grille which regulates when the automatic headlamps turn on. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps will come on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or heavy overcast weather. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system are only affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. Once the vehicle leaves the garage, it takes approximately one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is bright enough outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-7*.

To idle the vehicle with the automatic headlamp system off, turn the control to the off position.

The headlamps will also stay on after you exit the vehicle. This feature can be programmed using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization (with DIC Buttons) on page 5-53*.

If the vehicle is not equipped with DIC buttons, exit lighting is automatic. When it is dark enough outside, the exterior lamps remain on for 30 seconds after the ignition is moved from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF.

For vehicles without a radio, the instrument panel light remains on for 30 seconds with the driver door closed. For vehicles with a radio, the instrument panel light remains on for 10 minutes with the driver door closed. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35*.

The regular headlamp system can be turned on when needed.

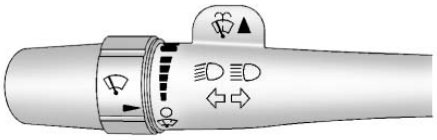
Hazard Warning Flashers

(Hazard Warning Flashers): Press this button located on top of the steering column, to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble. Press again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, the vehicle's turn signals will not work.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever for less than one second until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. This causes the turn signals to automatically flash three times. It will flash six times if Tow/Haul Mode is active.

Holding the turn signal lever for more than one second will cause the turn signals to flash until you release the lever.

The lever returns to its starting position whenever it is released.

If after signaling a turn or a lane change the arrows flash rapidly or do not come on, a signal bulb could be burned out.

Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-48*.

Turn Signal On Chime

If the turn signal is left on for more than 1.2 km (0.75 miles), a chime sounds at each flash of the turn signal, if the vehicle has a radio. The message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the Driver Information Center (DIC). To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

Fog Lamps

For vehicles with fog lamps, the control is located next to the exterior lamps control on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.

The ignition must be in the ON/RUN position for the fog lamps to come on.

(Fog Lamps): Press to turn the fog lamps on or off. A light will come on in the instrument panel cluster.

When the fog lamps are turned on, the parking lamps automatically turn on.

When the headlamps are changed to high beam, the fog lamps also go off. When the high-beam headlamps are turned off, the fog lamps will come on again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on with the fog lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary Roof-Mounted Lamp

If the vehicle has this feature, this button includes wiring provisions for a dealer or a qualified service center to install an auxiliary roof lamp.

This button is located on the overhead console.

When the wiring is connected to an auxiliary roof-mounted lamp, pressing the bottom of the button will activate the lamp and illuminate an indicator light at the bottom of this button. Pressing the top of the button will turn off the roof-mounted lamp and indicator.

The emergency roof lamp circuit is fused at 30 amps, so the total current draw of the attached lamps should be less than this value. The attachment points for the roof lamp circuits are two blunt cut wires located above the overhead console, a dark green switched power wire and a black ground wire.

For more information on roof mount emergency lamp installation, please visit the GM Upfitter website at www.gmupfitters.com or contact your dealer.

If the vehicle has this button, the vehicle may have the snow plow prep package. For further information, see *Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment on page 9-123*.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

(Instrument Panel Brightness): This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights and is located next to the exterior lamps control.

Push the knob to extend out and then it can be turned.

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights. Turning the knob to the farthest clockwise position turns on the dome lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cargo Lamp

The cargo lamps come on by turning the instrument panel brightness control knob to the farthest clockwise position. This knob is located on the instrument panel and also turns on the dome lamps.

The cargo lamps can be used if more light is needed in the cargo area of the vehicle or in the top-box storage units.

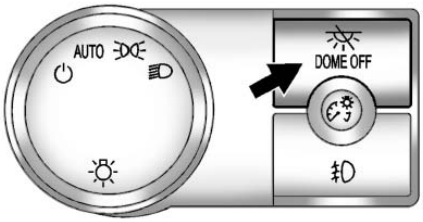
Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened. They turn off after all the doors are closed.

The dome lamps can also be turned on by turning the instrument panel brightness knob, located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column, clockwise to the farthest position. In this position, the dome lamps remain on whether a door is opened or closed. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-7*.

Dome Lamp Override

The dome lamp override button is located next to the exterior lamps control.



(Dome Off): Press the button in and the dome lamps remain off when a door is opened. Press the button again to return it to the extended position so that the dome lamps come on when a door is opened.

Reading Lamps

For vehicles with reading lamps, they are located on the overhead console.

To turn on the reading lamps, press the button located next to each lamp. To turn them off, press the button again.

The vehicle may also have reading lamps in other locations. To turn the lamps on or off, press the button located next to the lamp.

If the vehicle has a DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system, press the lamp lenses to turn the lamps on or off.

The lamps are fixed and cannot be adjusted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The vehicle has an illuminated entry feature.

When the doors are opened, the dome lamps will come on if the dome override button is in the extended position. If the dome override button is pressed in, the lamps will not come on.

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps come on when the key is removed from the ignition. They turn off automatically in 20 seconds. The lights do not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gauge or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message might be displayed, such as BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE, BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW, or LOW BATTERY. If one of these messages displays, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

Battery Power Protection

This feature shuts off the dome and reading lamps, if they are left on for more than 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. The cargo lamp shuts off after 20 minutes. This prevents the battery from running down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Infotainment System

Introduction
Introduction 7-1
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2
Operation 7-2

Radio
AM-FM Radio 7-8
Satellite Radio 7-10
Radio Reception 7-13
Fixed Mast Antenna 7-14
Satellite Radio Antenna 7-14

Audio Players
CD Player 7-14
CD/DVD Player 7-21
Auxiliary Devices 7-33

Rear Seat Infotainment
Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System 7-38
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System 7-47

Phone
Bluetooth 7-49

Introduction

Determine which radio the vehicle has and read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ WARNING

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non-audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

Notice: **Contact your dealer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-2 Infotainment System

Navigation/Radio System

For vehicles with a navigation radio system, see the separate Navigation System Manual.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of the vehicle's radio by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The radio does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

Operation

AM-FM Radio

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio with CD (MP3) Shown; Radio with USB and CD (MP3), Radio with USB and Six-Disc CD (MP3), and Radio with CD Similar

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-4 Infotainment System

Radio with USB, CD, and DVD (MP3)

The vehicle has one of these radios as its audio system.

Radios with CD and DVD

Vehicles with a USB, CD, and DVD radio have a Bose® Surround Sound System. Some of its features are explained later in this section, “Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade).”

Vehicles with a USB, CD, and DVD radio may have a Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. See *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information on the vehicle's RSE system.

The DVD player is the top slot on the radio faceplate. The player is capable of reading the DTS-programmed DVD Audio or DVD Video media. (DTS and DTS Digital Surround are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.)

Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Radio

(Power/Volume): Press to turn the system on and off.

Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume.

(Information) (AM-FM Radio and AM-FM Radio with CD): Press to switch the display between the radio station frequency and the time. While the ignition is off, press this button to display the time.

Speed Compensated Volume (SCV): Radios with Speed Compensated Volume (SCV) automatically adjust the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as the vehicle's speed changes while driving, so that the volume level stays consistent.

To activate SCV:

1. Set the radio volume to the desired level.
2. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
3. Press the softkey under the AUTO VOLUM (automatic volume) tab on the radio display.
4. Press the softkey under the desired Speed Compensated Volume setting (OFF, Low, Med, or High) to select the level of radio volume compensation. The display times out after approximately 10 seconds. Each higher setting allows for more radio volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble) (AM-FM Radio and AM-FM Radio with CD)

To adjust the bass or treble:

1. Press the knob until Bass or Treble displays.
2. To adjust the setting, do one of the following:
   - Turn the knob.
   - Press either SEEK, or SEEK.
   - Press either FWD, or REV.

EQ (Equalization): Press this button to choose bass and treble equalization settings designed for different types of music. Selecting MANUAL, or changing bass or treble, returns the EQ to the manual bass and treble settings.

Unique EQ settings can be saved for each source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble) (All Except AM-FM Radio and Radio with CD)

BASS/MID/TREB (Bass, Midrange, or Treble): To adjust the bass, midrange, or treble:

1. Press the ♫ knob until the tone control tabs display.
2. Highlight the desired tone control tab by doing one of the following:
   - Press the ♫ knob.
   - Press the softkey under the desired tab.
3. Adjust the setting by doing one of the following:
   - Turn the ♫ knob clockwise or counterclockwise.
   - Press the ⏭ SEEK, or ⏮ SEEK.
   - Press the ⏩ FWD, or ⏪ REV.

If a station's frequency is weak or if there is static, decrease the treble.

To quickly adjust bass, midrange, or treble to the middle position, press the softkey positioned under the BASS, MID, or TREB tab for more than two seconds. A beep sounds and the level adjusts to the middle position.

To quickly adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, press the ♫ knob for more than two seconds until a beep sounds.

EQ (Equalization): Press this button to choose bass and treble equalization settings designed for different types of music. Selecting MANUAL, or changing bass or treble, returns the EQ to the manual bass and treble settings.

Unique EQ settings can be saved for each source.

If the radio has a Bose® audio system, the EQ settings are either MANUAL or TALK.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade) (AM-FM Radio and AM-FM Radio with CD)

To adjust the balance or fade:

1. Press or press the knob until the speaker control label displays.
2. To adjust the setting, do one of the following:
   - Turn the knob.
   - Press either SEEK, or SEEK.
   - Press either FWD, or REV.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade) (All Except AM-FM Radio and Radio with CD)

BAL/FADE (Balance/Fade):
To adjust the balance or fade:

1. Press the knob until the speaker control tabs display.
2. Highlight the desired speaker control tab by doing one of the following:
   - Press the knob.
   - Press the softkey under the desired tab.
3. Adjust the setting by doing one of the following:
   - Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise.
   - Press the SEEK, or SEEK.
   - Press the FWD, or REV.

To quickly adjust all speaker and tone controls to the middle position, press the knob for more than two seconds.

If the Rear Seat Audio (RSA) is turned on, the radio disables FADE and mutes the rear speakers.

Radio Messages

Calibration Error: The audio system has been calibrated for the vehicle from the factory. If Calibration Error displays, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer for service.

Locked or Loc: One of these messages will display when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up the radio. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Radio Data System (RDS)

For radios with the Radio Data System (RDS) feature, it only works with FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters will display. In rare cases, a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

i (Information) (RDS Features): For vehicles with RDS features, press i to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS station. If information is available, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, "NO INFO" displays.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press to switch between AM, FM, or XM™, if equipped.

♫ (Tune): Turn to manually select radio stations.

SEEK: Press to seek the previous radio station. Press and hold for a few seconds until a beep sounds to scan for radio stations in descending order; press the SEEK button again to stop scanning radio stations. The radio only seeks and scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

For the AM-FM Radio, press and hold the SEEK for four seconds until a double beep sounds to scan the preset stations. The station frequency flashes while the radio is in the scan mode.

SEEK: Press to seek the next radio station. Press and hold for a few seconds until a beep sounds to scan for radio stations in ascending order; press the SEEK button again to stop scanning radio stations. The radio only seeks and scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

For the AM-FM Radio, press and hold the SEEK for four seconds until a double beep sounds to scan the preset stations. The station frequency flashes while the radio is in the scan mode.

REV: Press to manually tune to a radio station in descending order.

FWD: Press to manually tune to a radio station in ascending order.

FAV (Favorites): Press to select different favorites pages for stored radio stations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing Radio Stations

Drivers are encouraged to store radio station while the vehicle is parked; see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*. Tune to stored radio stations using the presets, favorites button, and steering wheel controls, if the vehicle has this feature.

Radios that have a FAV button store radio stations as favorites. Up to 36 stations can be programmed as favorites using the six softkeys below the radio station frequency tabs and by using the FAV button. Press the FAV button to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM, if equipped, stations.

Radios that do not have a FAV button store radio stations as presets. Up to 18 stations (6 FM1, 6 FM2, and 6 AM), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons.

Setting Preset Stations

To store presets:

1. Tune to a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons for three seconds until a beep sounds.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to store additional radio stations.

Storing a Radio Station as a Favorite

To store a station as a favorite:

1. Tune to a radio station.
2. Press the FAV button to display the page where the station will be stored.
3. Press and hold one of the six softkeys until a beep sounds.
4. Repeat Steps 1 through 3 to store additional radio stations.

The number of favorites pages can be set up using the MENU button. To set up the number of favorites pages:

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Press the softkey located below the FAV 1-6 tab.
3. Select the number of favorites pages by pressing the softkey located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press the FAV button, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency tabs and to begin the process of programming favorites.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Satellite Radio

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. For more information, contact XM at www.xmradio.com or 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S., and www.xmradio.ca or 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

i (Information) (XM Satellite Radio Service): For vehicles with XM, press i to display additional text information related to the current XM channel. If information is available, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, "NO INFO" displays.

Finding a Channel

BAND: Press to switch between AM, FM, or XM™, if equipped.

♫ (Tune): Turn to manually select an XM channel.

⏮ SEEK: Press to go to the previous XM channel.

⏭ SEEK: Press to go to the next XM channel.

◁◁ REV: Press to go to the previous XM category.

▷▷ FWD: Press to go to the next XM category.

FAV (Favorites): Press to select different favorites pages for stored radio stations.

CAT (Category): The CAT button is used to find XM channels when the radio is in the XM mode.

Finding a Category (CAT) Station

To find XM channels in a category:

1. Press the CAT button to display the category tabs. Continue pressing the CAT button until the desired category name displays.
   - Radios with CD and DVD can also navigate the category list by pressing the ▷▷ FWD or the ◁◁ REV buttons.
2. Press either of the two softkeys below the desired category tab to immediately tune to the first XM station in that category.

   To go to the previous or next XM station in the selected category, do one of the following:
   - Turn the ♫ knob.
   - Press the softkey below the right or left arrows in the category tab.
   - Press ⏮ SEEK or ⏭ SEEK.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. To exit the category search mode, press the FAV button or BAND button to display the favorites again.

Adding and Removing Categories

Categories cannot be added or removed while the vehicle is moving faster than 8 km/h (5 mph).

To add or remove a category:

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Press the softkey located below the XM CAT tab.
3. Turn the ♫ knob to display the category to add or remove.
4. Press the softkey located under the Add or Remove tab.

   To restore all removed categories, press the softkey under the Restore All tab.
5. Repeat the steps to remove more categories.

Storing XM Channels

Drivers are encouraged to store XM channels while the vehicle is parked; see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*. Tune to stored radio stations using the presets, favorites button, and steering wheel controls, if the vehicle has this feature.

Up to 36 stations can be programmed as favorites using the six softkeys below the radio station frequency tabs and by using the FAV button. Press the FAV button to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM, if equipped, stations.

Storing an XM Channel as a Favorite

To store a station as a favorite:

1. Tune to an XM channel.
2. Press the FAV button to display the page where the station will be stored.
3. Press and hold one of the six softkeys until a beep sounds.
4. Repeat Steps 1 through 3 to store additional radio stations.

The number of favorites pages can be set up using the MENU button. To set up the number of favorites pages:

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Press the softkey located below the FAV 1-6 tab.
3. Select the number of favorites pages by pressing the softkey located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press the FAV button, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency tabs and to begin the process of programming favorites.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

XM Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

No XM Signal: The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading XM: The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune in to another channel.

Channel Unauth : This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM subscription package.

Channel Unavail: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

No Artist Info: No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Title Info: No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No CAT Info: No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Information: No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

CAT Not Found: There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

XM Theftlocked: The XM receiver in the vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having the vehicle serviced, check with your dealer.

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM Radio eight-digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer.

Check Antenna: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver or antenna could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check XM Receivr: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

XM Not Available: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM Stereo

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 miles). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast to coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fixed Mast Antenna

The fixed mast antenna can withstand most car washes without being damaged as long as it is securely attached to the base. If the mast becomes slightly bent, straighten it out by hand. If the mast is badly bent, replace it.

Occasionally check to make sure the antenna is tightened to its base. If tightening is required, tighten by hand until fully seated plus one quarter turn.

Satellite Radio Antenna

The XM Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Audio Players

CD Player

Care of the CD Player

Do not add any label to a CD. It could get caught in the CD. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

The use of CD lens cleaners is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD player mechanism.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see “ CD Player Messages” later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of CDs

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R or CD-RW quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R or CD-RW has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-Rs or CD-RWs in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a CD is soiled, clean it with a soft, lint-free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Inserting a CD (Single CD Player)

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD should begin playing.

Inserting a CD(s) (Six-Disc CD Player)

LOAD : Press to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD:

1. Press and release the LOAD button.
2. Wait for the message to insert the disc.
3. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs:

1. Press and hold the LOAD button for two seconds. A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays.
2. Wait for the message on when to insert the discs. The CD player takes up to six CDs.
3. Press the LOAD button again to cancel loading more CDs.

Ejecting a CD (Single CD Player)

EJECT: Press and release to eject the disc. Remove the CD when Remove Disc displays. If the disc is not removed, after several seconds the disc is automatically pulled back into the player.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ejecting a CD (Six-Disc CD Player)

⏏ **EJECT :** Press and release to eject the disc that is currently playing. Remove the CD when Remove Disc displays. If the disc is not removed, after several seconds the disc is automatically pulled back into the player.

To eject all CDs, press and hold the ⏏ EJECT button for two seconds.

Playing a CD

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source. The CD is controlled by the buttons on the radio faceplate or by the RSA unit. See *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays on the left side of the radio display. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 in) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to cycle between CD or Auxiliary when listening to the radio. The CD icon and a message showing the disc and/or track number will display when a CD is in the player. Press again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device; see *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* for more information. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Input Device Found” displays.

i (Information): Press to display additional text information related to the current song. If information is available, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, “NO INFO” displays.

♫ (Tune): Turn to select tracks on the CD that is currently playing.

⏮ **SEEK:** Press to go to the start of the current track if more than 10 seconds on the CD have played.

Press to go to the previous track if less than 10 seconds on the CD have played.

Press and hold, or press multiple times, to continue moving backward through the tracks on the CD.

⏭ **SEEK:** Press to go to the next track.

Press and hold, or press multiple times, to continue moving forward through the tracks on the CD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

◁◁ **REV (Fast Reverse):** Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track.

▷▷ **FWD (Fast Forward):** Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track.

RPT (Repeat): For the AM-FM Radio with CD, press and release the RPT button to repeat the current track. Press RPT again to turn off repeat play.

RDM (Random): Press to listen to tracks in random, rather than sequential order. To use random, do one of the following:

For the AM-FM Radio with CD:

1. Press the RDM button until the random icon displays.
2. Press the RDM button again until the random icon disappears from the display.

For the Radio with CD (MP3) and Radio with USB and CD (MP3):

1. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays.
2. Press the softkey again to turn off random play.

For the Radio with USB and Six-Disc CD (MP3):

1. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays to play tracks from all CDs loaded in random order.
2. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays to play tracks from a single CD in random order.
3. Press the same softkey again to turn off random play.

MP3-Supported Files

The Radio with CD (MP3), Radio with USB and CD (MP3), and Radio with USB and Six-Disc CD (MP3) have the capability of playing an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW disc.

Format

Radios that have the capability of playing MP3s can play .mp3 or .wma files that were recorded onto a CD-R or CD-RW disc. The files can be recorded with the following fixed bit rates: 32 kbps, 40 kbps, 56 kbps, 64 kbps, 80 kbps, 96 kbps, 112 kbps, 128 kbps, 160 kbps, 192 kbps, 224 kbps, 256 kbps, and 320 kbps or a variable bit rate.

Compressed Audio or Mixed Mode Discs

The radio can play discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio and MP3 files. If both formats are on the disc, the radio reads all MP3 files first, then the uncompressed CD audio files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-18 Infotainment System

CD-R- or CD-RW-Supported File and Folder Structure

The radio supports:

- Up to 50 folders.
- Up to 8 folders in depth.
- Up to 50 playlists.
- Up to 255 files.
- Playlists with an .m3u or .wpl extension.
- Files with an .mp3, .wma, or .cda file extension.

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. Files are stored in the root directory when the disc or storage device does not contain folders. Files accessed from the root directory of a CD display as F1 ROOT.

Empty Folder

Folders that do not contain files are skipped, and the player advances to the next folder that contains files.

Order of Play

Compressed audio files are accessed in the following order:

- Playlists (Px).
- Files stored in the root directory.
- Files stored in folders in the root directory.

Tracks are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or 4 pages are shortened. The display does not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the file name is not displayed.

Preprogrammed Playlists

CDs that have preprogrammed playlists reated using WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed; however, there is no playlist-editing capability using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playlists that have an .m3u or .pls file extension and are stored on a USB device may be supported by the radio with a USB port.

Playlists can be changed by using the softkeys below the < folder and folder > tabs, the ♫ knob, the ⏮ SEEK button, or the ⏭ SEEK button. An MP3 CD-R or CD-RW that has been recorded without using file folders can be played. If a CD-R or CD-RW contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 15 playlists, and 512 folders and files, the player allows access and navigates up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum are not accessible.

Playing an MP3

i (Information): Press to display additional text information related to the current song. If information is available, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, "NO INFO" displays.

♫ (Tune): Turn to select MP3's on the CD currently playing.

⏮ SEEK: Press to go to the start of the track, if more than 10 seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving backward through tracks.

⏭ SEEK: Press to go to the next track. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving forward through tracks.

◁◁ REV (Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the file displays. Release ◁◁ REV to resume playing.

▷▷ FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume and the elapsed time of the file displays. Release ▷▷ FWD to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

< folder (Previous Folder): Press the softkey below the < folder tab to go to the first track in the previous folder.

folder > (Next Folder): Press the softkey below the folder > tab to go to the first track in the next folder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-20 Infotainment System

RDM (Random): Press to listen to tracks in random, rather than sequential order. To use random, do one of the following:

For the Radio with CD (MP3) and Radio with USB and CD (MP3):

1. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays.
2. Press the softkey again to turn off random play.

For the Radio with USB and Six-Disc CD (MP3):

1. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays to play tracks from all CDs loaded in random order.
2. Press the softkey positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays to play tracks from a single CD in random order.
3. Press the same softkey again to turn off random play.

(Music Navigator): Press the softkey below the tab to play the files in order by artist or album.

The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It can take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of files on the disc. The radio may begin playing while it is scanning in the background.

When the scan is finished, the disc begins playing files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display. Once all songs by that artist are played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order and begins playing files by that artist.

To listen to files by another artist, press the softkey located below either arrow tab. The disc goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either softkey below the arrow tab until the desired artist displays.

To change from playback by artist to playback by album:

1. Press the softkey located below the Sort By tab.
2. Press one of the softkeys below the Album tab from the sort screen.
3. Press the softkey below the Back tab to return to the main music navigator screen.

The album name displays on the second line between the arrows, and songs from the current album begin to play. Once all songs from that album have played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD and begins playing MP3's from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the softkey below the Back tab to return to normal MP3 playback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD Player Messages

CHECK DISC: If this message displays and/or the CD ejects, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- The road is very rough. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There was a problem while burning the CD.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

CD/DVD Player

Care of the CD and DVD Player

Do not add any label to a disc. It could get caught in the CD or DVD player. If a disc is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded disc with a marking pen.

The use of CD/DVD lens cleaners is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the optics with lubricants internal to the CD and DVD player mechanism.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of CDs and DVDs

If playing a CD-R or CD-RW, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R or CD-RW quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R or CD-RW has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-Rs or CD-RWs in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD or DVD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a disc is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the disc does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a disc while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a disc is soiled, clean it with a soft, lint-free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Audio Output

Only one audio source can be heard through the speakers at one time. An audio source is defined as DVD slot, CD slot, XM, FM-AM, front auxiliary jack, USB port, or rear auxiliary jack.

Press the ⏻ button to turn the radio on. The radio can be heard through all of the vehicle speakers.

Front seat passengers can listen to the radio (AM, FM, or XM if equipped) by pressing the BAND button or the DVD/CD AUX button to select CD slot, DVD slot, front auxiliary input, USB port, or rear auxiliary input (if available).

If a playback device is plugged into the radio's front auxiliary input jack, USB port, or the rear auxiliary jack, the front seat passengers are able to listen to playback from this source through the vehicle speakers. See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" in *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*, or "Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks" under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information.

In some vehicles, depending on audio options, the rear speakers can be muted when the RSA power is turned on. See *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information.

Inserting a Disc

Insert a disc partway into either slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the disc should begin playing. (Loading a disc into the system, depending on media type and format, ranges from 5 to 20 seconds for a CD, and up to 30 seconds for a DVD to begin playing.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ejecting a Disc

⏏ **CD (Eject):** Press and release to eject the disc that is currently playing. The CD ejects from the bottom slot. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The disc can be removed. If the disc is not removed, after several seconds the disc automatically pulls back into the player.

⏏ **DVD (Eject):** Press and release to eject the disc that is currently playing in the top slot. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays.

If loading and reading of a disc cannot be completed, due to unknown format, etc., and the disc fails to eject, press and hold for more than five seconds to force the disc to eject.

Playing a CD (in Either the DVD or CD Slot)

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source. The CD is controlled by the buttons on the radio faceplate or by the RSA unit. See *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information. The DVD/CD decks (the upper slot is the DVD deck and the lower slot is the CD deck) of the radio are compatible with most audio CDs, CD-Rs, CD-RWs, and MP3s.

When a CD is inserted, the text tab DVD or CD symbol displays on the left side of the radio display. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 in) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

DVD/CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press to cycle through DVD, CD, or Auxiliary when listening to the radio. The DVD/CD text tab and a message showing the track or chapter number will display when a disc is in either slot. Press the DVD/CD AUX button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device; see *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* for more information. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Aux Input Device” displays. If a disc is in both the DVD slot and the CD slot, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles between the two sources and does not indicate “No Aux Input Device.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-24 Infotainment System

If a front auxiliary device is connected, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles through all available options, such as: DVD slot, CD slot, Front Auxiliary, and Rear Auxiliary (if available). See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" in *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* or "Audio/ Video (A/V) Jacks" under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information.

If a disc is inserted into the top DVD slot, the rear seat operator can turn on the video screen and use the remote control to navigate the CD (tracks only) through the remote control.

(Information): Press to display additional text information related to the current song. If information is available, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, "NO INFO" displays.

(Tune): Turn to select tracks on the disc that is currently playing.

SEEK: Press to go to the start of the current track, if more than five seconds on the CD have played.

Press to go to the previous track if less than five seconds on the CD have played.

Press and hold, or press multiple times, to continue moving backward through the tracks on the CD.

SEEK: Press to go to the next track.

Press and hold, or press multiple times, to continue moving forward through the tracks on the CD.

REV (Fast Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track.

RDM (Random): Press to listen to tracks in random, rather than sequential order. To use random:

1. Press the softkey under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays.
2. Press the softkey again to turn off random play.

MP3-and WMA-Supported Files

Format

The radio can play .mp3 or .wma files that were recorded onto a CD-R or CD-RW disc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compressed Audio or Mixed Mode Discs

The radio plays discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio and MP3/WMA files depending on which slot the disc is loaded into.

The DVD player only reads uncompressed audio and ignores MP3/WMA files on a mixed mode disc.

The CD player reads both uncompressed audio and MP3/WMA files on a mixed mode disc. Uncompressd audio is played before MP3/WMA files. Press the CAT (category) button to toggle between uncompressed audio and MP3/WMA files.

CD-R- or CD-RW-Supported File and Folder Structure

The DVD player supports:

- Up to 255 folders.
- Up to 8 folders in depth.
- Up to 15 playlists.
- Up to 40 sessions.
- Playlists with an .m3u or .wpl extension.
- Files with an .mp3, .wma, or .cda file extension.

The CD player supports:

- Up to 512 files and folders.
- Up to 8 folders in depth.
- Playlists with an .m3u or .wpl extension.
- Files with an .mp3, .wma, or .cda file extension.

Root Directory

The root directory of the disc is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT on the radio.

If a disc contains both uncompressed CD audio and MP3/WMA files, a folder under the root directory called CD accesses all of the CD audio tracks on the disc.

Empty Folder

Folders that do not contain files are skipped, and the player advances to the next folder that contains files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

No Folder

When the disc contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder function does not function on a disc that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder, the radio displays ROOT.

When the disc contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and the folder up buttons search playlists first and then go to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio displays ROOT.

Order of Play

Compressed audio files are accessed in the following order:

- Playlists (Px).
- Files stored in the root directory.
- Files stored in folders in the root directory.

Tracks are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless the folder mode has been chosen as the default display. The new track name displays.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or 4 pages are shortened. Parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the file name do not display.

Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists that were created using WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed; however, they cannot be edited using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Playlists that have an .m3u or .pls file extension and are stored on a USB device may be supported by the radio with a USB port.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an MP3 or WMA (in Either the DVD or CD Slot)

If a disc is inserted into the top DVD slot, the rear seat operator can turn on the video screen and use the remote control to navigate the CD (tracks only).

(Tune): Turn to select MP3/WMA files.

SEEK: Press to go to the start of the track, if more than five seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times, if less than five seconds have played, to continue moving backward through tracks.

SEEK: Press to go to the next track.

Press and hold, or press multiple times, to continue moving forward through tracks.

REV (Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly.

(Previous Folder): Press the softkey below the tab to go to the first track in the previous folder.

(Next Folder): Press the softkey below the tab to go to the first track in the next folder.

RDM (Random): Press to listen to tracks in random, rather than sequential order.

To use random:

1. Press the softkey under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays
2. Press the same softkey again to turn off random play.

(Music Navigator): Press the softkey below the tab to play files in order by artist or album.

The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It can take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of files on the disc. The radio may begin playing while it is scanning in the background.

When the scan is finished, the disc begins playing files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display. Once all songs by that artist are played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order and begins playing files by that artist.

To listen to files by another artist, press the softkey located below either arrow tab. The disc goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either softkey below the arrow tab until the artist displays.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To change from playback by artist to playback by album:

1. Press the softkey below the Sort By tab.
2. Press one of the softkeys below the Album tab from the sort screen.
3. Press the softkey below the Back tab to return to the main music navigator screen.

The album name displays on the second line between the arrows, and songs from the current album begin to play. Once all songs from that album have played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD and begins playing MP3 files from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the softkey below the Back tab to return to normal MP3 playback.

Using the DVD Player

The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the remote control, the RSA system, or by the buttons on the radio faceplate. See “Remote Control” under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* and *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information.

The DVD player is only compatible with DVDs of the appropriate region code printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

The DVD slot of the radio is compatible with most audio CDs and CD-R/RW, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, DVD-R/RW, and DVD+R/RW media, along with MP3 and WMA formats.

If an error message displays on the video screen or the radio, see “DVD Display Error Messages” under, *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38*, and “CD/DVD Player Messages” later in this section for more information.

Inserting a Disc

Insert a disc partway into the top slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the disc should begin playing. “Loading Disc” shows on the radio display. At the same time, the radio displays a softkey menu of option(s). Some discs automatically play the movie while others default to the softkey menu display, which requires the Play, Enter, or Navigation softkeys to be pressed, either by softkey or by the rear seat passenger using the remote control.

Loading a disc into the system, depending on media type and format, ranges from 5 to 20 seconds for a CD, and up to 30 seconds for a DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ejecting a Disc

DVD (Eject): Press and release to eject the disc currently playing in the top slot. A beep sounds and Ejecting Disc displays.

If loading and reading of a disc cannot be completed, due to unknown format, etc., and the disc fails to eject, press and hold for more than five seconds to force the disc to eject.

Playing a DVD

DVD/CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press to cycle through DVD, CD, or Auxiliary when listening to the radio. The DVD/CD text tab and a message showing the track or chapter number will display when a disc is in either slot. Press the DVD/CD AUX button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device; see *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* for more information. If a portable audio player is not connected, "No Aux Input Device" displays. If a disc is in both the DVD slot and the CD slot, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles between the two sources and does not indicate "No Aux Input Device." If a front auxiliary device is connected, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles through all available options, such as: DVD slot, CD slot, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary (if available). See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" in *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* or "Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks" under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information.

If a disc is inserted into the top DVD slot, the rear seat operator can turn on the video screen and use the remote control to navigate the CD (tracks only) through the remote control.

(Power): Press to turn the radio on or off. Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume. Press and hold for more than two seconds to turn off the entire radio and Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system and to start the Parental Control feature. Parental Control prevents the rear seat occupant from operating the Rear Seat Audio (RSA) system or remote control.

A lock symbol displays next to the clock display. The Parental Control feature remains on until the knob is pressed and held for more than two seconds again, or until the driver turns the ignition off and exits the vehicle.

(Tune): Turn to select tracks on a CD or DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-30 Infotainment System

SEEK: Press to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press again to go to the previous track or chapter. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

SEEK: Press to go to the next track or chapter. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

REV (Fast Reverse): Press to quickly reverse the CD or DVD at five times the normal speed. To stop fast reversing, press again. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press to fast forward the CD or DVD at five times the normal speed. To stop fast forwarding, press again. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

Using Softkeys to Play a DVD-V (Video)

Once a DVD-V is inserted, the radio display menu shows several tab options for playback. Press the softkey located under any tab option during DVD-V playback.

/ (Play/Pause): Press either the Play or Pause tab displayed on the radio, to toggle between pausing or restarting playback of a DVD. If the forward arrow is showing on the display, the system is in pause mode. If the Pause tab is showing on the display, the system is in playback mode. If the DVD screen is off, press the play button to turn the screen on.

Some DVDs begin playing after the previews have finished, although there could be a delay of up to 30 seconds. If the DVD does not begin playing the movie automatically, press the softkey located under the play/pause symbol tag displayed on the radio. If the DVD still does not play, refer to the on-screen instructions, if available.

(Stop): Press to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD.

(Enter): Press to select the choices that are highlighted in any menu.

(Menu): Press to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the softkeys located under the navigation arrows to navigate the cursor through the DVD menu. After making a selection press this button. This button only operates when using a DVD.

Nav (Navigate): Press to display directional arrows for navigating through the menus.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Return): Press to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button operates only when a DVD is playing and a menu is active.

The rear seat passenger can navigate the DVD-V and DVD-A menus and controls through the remote control. See “Remote Control” under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information. The video screen automatically turns on when the DVD-V is inserted into the DVD slot, and does not automatically power on when the DVD-A is inserted into the DVD slot. It must be manually turned on by the rear seat occupant through the remote control power button.

Using Softkeys to Play a DVD-A (Audio)

Once a DVD-A is inserted, the radio display menu shows several tab options for playback. Press the softkey located under any tab option during DVD-A playback.

▶ / ❚❚ (Play/Pause): Press either the play or pause icon displayed on the radio, to toggle between pausing or restarting playback of a DVD. If the forward arrow is showing on the display, the system is in pause mode. If the pause tab is showing on the display, the system is in playback mode.

◀ Group ▶ : Press to cycle through musical groupings on the DVD-A disc.

Nav (Navigate): Press to display directional arrows for navigating through the menus.

(Audio Stream): Press to cycle through audio stream formats located on the DVD-A disc. The video screen shows the audio stream changing.

The rear seat passenger can navigate the DVD-V and DVD-A menus and controls through the remote control. See “Remote Control” under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information. The video screen automatically turns on when the DVD-V is inserted into the DVD slot, and does not automatically power on when the DVD-A is inserted into the DVD slot. It must be manually turned on by the rear seat occupant through the remote control power button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stopping and Resuming Playback

To stop playing a DVD without turning off the system, press the ■ button on the remote control, or press the softkey located under the ■ or the ▶ / ❚❚ tabs displayed on the radio. If the radio is sourced to something other than DVD-V, press the DVD/CD AUX button to make DVD-V the active source.

To resume DVD playback, press the ▶ / ❚❚ button on the remote control, or press the softkey located under the ▶ / ❚❚ tab on the radio. The DVD should resume play from where it last stopped if the disc has not been ejected and the stop button has not been pressed twice on the remote control. If the disc has been ejected or the stop button has been pressed twice on the remote control, the disc resumes playing at the beginning of the disc.

CD/DVD Player Messages

Disc Format Error: This message displays if the disc is inserted with the disc label wrong side up, or if the disc is damaged.

Disc Region Error: This message displays if the disc is not from a correct region.

No Disc Inserted: This message displays if no disc is present when the ⏏ or DVD/CD AUX button is pressed on the radio.

Optical Error: This message displays if the disc was inserted upside down.

Disk Read Error: This message displays if a disc was inserted with an invalid or unknown format.

Player Error: This message displays if there are disc load or disc eject problems.

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the disc should play.
- The road is very rough. When the road becomes smoother, the disc should play.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD/DVD player.

If the disc is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good disc.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

Radios with an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate can connect to an external audio device such as an iPod®, MP3 player, or CD player, for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park). See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2* for more information on driver distraction.

To use a portable audio player, connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable to the radio's front auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, press the radio CD/AUX button to begin playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

For optimal sound quality, increase the portable audio device's volume to the loudest level.

It is always best to power the portable audio device through its own battery while playing.

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume of the portable player. Additional volume adjustments might have to be made from the portable device if the volume is not loud or soft enough.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio when a portable audio device is playing. The portable audio device continues playing.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD when a portable audio device is playing. Press again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Input Device Found” displays.

DVD/CD AUX (DVD/CD/ Auxiliary): Press to cycle through DVD, CD, or Auxiliary when listening to the radio. The DVD/CD text tab and a message showing track or chapter number will display when a disc is in either slot. Press again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device, such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, “No Aux Input Device” displays. If a disc is in both the DVD slot and the CD slot, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles between the two sources and does not indicate “No Aux Input Device.” If a front auxiliary device is connected, the DVD/CD AUX button cycles through all available options, such as: DVD slot, CD slot, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary (if available). See “Using the Auxiliary Input Jack” in this section, or “Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks” under *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-38* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the USB Port

Radios with a USB port can control a USB storage device or an iPod® using the radio buttons and knobs. See “Playing an MP3” in *CD Player on page 7-14* or *CD/DVD Player on page 7-21* for information about how to connect and control a USB storage device or an iPod.

USB Support

The USB connector is located on the dashboard or in the center console, and uses the USB 2.0 standard.

USB-Supported Devices

- USB flash drive
- Portable USB hard drive
- Fifth generation or later iPod
- iPod nano
- iPod touch
- iPod classic

Not all iPods and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See www.apple.com/itunes.

For help with identifying the iPod, go to www.apple.com/support.

Radios that have a USB port can play .mp3 and .wma files that are stored on a USB storage device as well as AAC files that are stored on an iPod.

USB-Supported File and Folder Structure

The radio supports:

- Up to 700 folders
- Up to 8 folders in depth
- Up to 65,535 files.
- Folder and file names up to 64 bytes
- Files with an .mp3 or .wma file extension
- AAC files stored on an iPod
- FAT16
- FAT32

Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod®

The USB port can be used to control an iPod or a USB storage device.

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port located in the center console or on the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To connect an iPod, connect one end of the USB cable that came with the iPod to the iPod's dock connector and connect the other end to the USB port located in the center console or on the instrument panel. If the vehicle is on and the USB connection works, "OK to disconnect" and a GM logo may appear on the iPod, and iPod appears on the radio display. The iPod music appears on the radio's display and begins playing.

The iPod charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the vehicle is in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

If you have an older iPod model that is not supported, it can still be used by connecting it to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm (1/8 in) stereo cable. See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" earlier for more information.

Using the Radio to Control a USB Storage Device or iPod

The radio can control a USB storage device or an iPod using the radio buttons and knobs, and display song information on the radio's display.

(Tune): Turn to select files.

SEEK: Press to go to the start of the track, if more than 10 seconds have played. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving backward through tracks.

SEEK: Press to go to the next track. Press and hold or press multiple times to continue moving forward through tracks.

REV (Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release REV to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release FWD to resume playing. The elapsed time of the file displays.

(Information): Press to display additional information about the selected track.

Using Softkeys to Control a USB Storage Device or iPod

The five softkeys below the radio display are used to control the functions listed below.

To use the softkeys:

1. Press the first or fifth softkey below the radio display to display the functions listed below, or press the softkey below the function if it is currently displayed.
2. Press the softkey below the tab with the function on it to use that function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-36 Infotainment System

(Pause): Press the softkey below to pause the track. The tab appears raised when pause is being used. Press the softkey below again to resume playback.

Back: Press the softkey below the back tab to go back to the main display screen on an iPod, or the root directory on a USB storage device.

(Folder View): Press the softkey below to view the contents of the current folder on the USB drive. To browse and select files:

1. Press the softkey below .
2. Turn to scroll through the list of folders.
3. Press to select the desired folder. If there is more then one folder, repeat Steps 1 and 2 until the desired folder is reached.
4. Turn to scroll through the files in the selected folder.
5. Press to select the desired file to be played.

To skip through large lists, the five softkeys can be used to navigate in the following order:

- First softkey, first item in the list.
- Second softkey, 1% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Third softkey, 5% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fourth softkey, 10% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fifth softkey, end of the list.

(Music Navigator): Press the softkey below to view and select a file on an iPod, using the iPod's menu system. Files are sorted by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Genres
- Songs
- Composers

To select files:

1. Press the softkey below .
2. Turn to scroll through the list of menus.
3. Press to select the desired menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Turn ♫ to scroll through the folders or files in the selected menu.
5. Press ♫ to select the desired file to be played.

To skip through large lists, the five softkeys can be used to navigate in the following order:

- First softkey, first item in the list.
- Second softkey, 1% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Third softkey, 5% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fourth softkey, 10% through the list each time the softkey is pressed.
- Fifth softkey, end of the list.

Repeat Functionality

To use Repeat:

Press the softkey below ↻ or ↻1 to select between Repeat All and Repeat Track.

↻ **(Repeat All):** Press the softkey below ↻ to repeat all tracks. The tab appears lowered when Repeat All is being used. This is the default mode when a USB storage device or iPod is first connected.

↻1 **(Repeat Track):** Press the softkey below ↻1 to repeat one track. The tab appears raised when Repeat Track is being used.

Shuffle Functionality

To use Shuffle:

Press the softkey below ⇉, ⤮S, ⤮A, or ⤮F to select between Shuffle Off, Shuffle All Songs/ Shuffle Songs, Shuffle Album, or Shuffle Folder.

⇉ **(Shuffle Off):** Press the softkey below ⤮S to turn shuffle off. This is the default mode when a USB storage device or iPod is first connected.

⤮S **(Shuffle All Songs/Shuffle Songs):** Press the softkey below ⤮F or ⤮A to shuffle all songs on the USB storage device or iPod.

⤮A **(Shuffle Album):** Press the softkey below ⇉ to shuffle all songs in the current album on an iPod.

⤮F **(Shuffle Folder):** Press the softkey below ⇉ to shuffle all songs in the current folder on a USB storage device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Seat Infotainment

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System

The vehicle may have a DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system works with the vehicle's audio system. The DVD player is part of the front radio. The RSE system includes a radio with a DVD player, a video display screen, audio/video jacks, two wireless headphones, and a remote control. See *CD/DVD Player on page 7-21* for more information on the vehicle's CD/DVD player.

Before Driving

The RSE is designed for rear seat passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

In severe or extreme weather conditions, the RSE system might not work until the temperature is within the operating range. The operating range for the RSE system is above −20°C (−4°F) or below 60°C (140°F). If the temperature of the vehicle is outside this range, heat or cool the vehicle until the temperature is within the operating range of the RSE system.

Parental Control

The RSE system may have a Parental Control feature, depending on which radio the vehicle has. To start Parental Control, press and hold the radio power button for more than two seconds to stop all system features such as: radio, video screen, Rear Seat Audio (RSA), DVD, and/or CD. While Parental Control is on, a padlock icon displays.

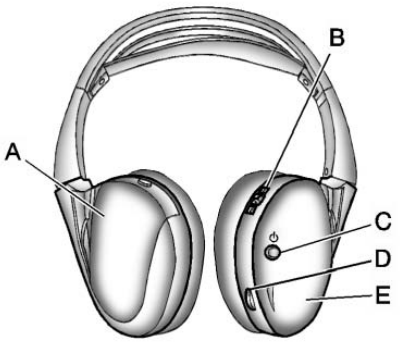
The radio can be turned back on with a single press of the power button, but the RSE system will remain under Parental Control.

To turn Parental Control off, press and hold the radio power button for more than two seconds. The RSE returns from where it was previously left and the padlock icon disappears from the radio display.

Parental Control can also be turned off by inserting or ejecting any disc, pressing the play icon on the radio DVD display menu, or changing an ignition position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headphones



A. Battery cover

B. Channel 1 or 2 switch

C. Power button

D. Volume control

E. Power indicator light

The RSE includes two 2-channel wireless headphones that are dedicated to this system. Channel 1 is dedicated to the video screen, while Channel 2 is dedicated to Rear Seat Audio (RSA) selections. These headphones can be used to listen to the radio, CDs, DVDs, MP3s, DVD-As, or any auxiliary source connected to A/V jacks or the auxiliary input jack, if the vehicle has this feature. The wireless headphones have an On/Off button, channel 1 or 2 switch, and a volume control.

Push the power button to turn on the headphones. An indicator light located on the headphones comes on. If the light comes on, but there is intermittent sound and/or static on the headphones, or if the indicator light does not come on, the batteries might need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section for more information. Switch the headphones to Off when not in use.

Infrared transmitters are located at the rear of the overhead console. The headphones shut off automatically to save the battery power if the RSE system and RSA are shut off, or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters for more than three minutes. If you move too far forward or step out of the vehicle, the headphones lose the audio signal.

To adjust the volume on the headphones, use the volume control located on the right side.

For optimal audio performance, the headphones must be worn correctly. Headphones should be worn with the headband over the top of the head for best audio reception. The symbol L (Left) appears on the outside bottom edge of the ear cup and should be positioned on the left ear. The symbol R (Right) appears on the outside bottom edge of the ear cup and should be positioned on the right ear.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the foam ear pads attached to the headphones become worn or damaged, the pads can be replaced separately from the headphone set. To purchase replacement ear pads, call 1-888-293-3332, then prompt zero (0), or contact your dealer.

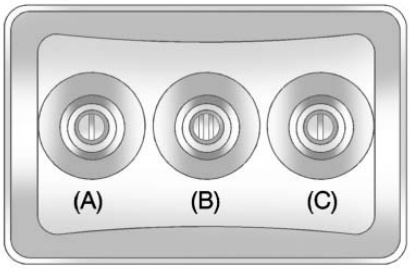
Battery Replacement

To change the batteries on the headphones:

1. Turn the screw to loosen the battery door located on the left side of the headphones. Slide the battery door open.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Replace the battery door and tighten the door screw.

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks



The A/V jacks, located on the rear of the floor console, allow audio or video signals to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to the RSE system. Adapter connectors or cables (not included) may be required to connect the auxiliary device to the A/V jacks. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper usage.

The A/V jacks are color coded to match typical home entertainment system equipment. The yellow jack (A) is for the video input. The white jack (B) is for the left audio input. The red jack (C) is for the right audio input.

Power for auxiliary devices is not supplied by the radio system.

To use the auxiliary inputs of the RSE system, connect an external auxiliary device to the color-coded A/V jacks and turn both the auxiliary device and the video screen power on. If the video screen is in the DVD player mode, pressing the AUX (auxiliary) button on the remote control switches the video screen from the DVD player mode to the auxiliary device. The audio of the connected source can be listened to over the speakers by sourcing the radio to the auxiliary device or by sourcing the RSA to the Rear Aux and listening with the wireless headphones on Channel 2 or with the wired headphones. See "Using the Auxiliary Input Jack" under *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* for more information about changing the source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the RSE Video Screen Settings

The screen display mode (normal, full, and zoom), screen brightness, and setup menu language can be changed from the on screen setup menu. To change any feature:

1. Press the ▢ (display menu) button on the remote control.
2. Use the remote control ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ (navigation) arrows and the ↵ (enter) button to use the setup menu.
3. Press the ▢ button again to remove the setup menu from the screen.

Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs can be heard through the following possible sources:

- Wireless headphones
- Vehicle speakers
- Vehicle-wired headphone jacks on the RSA system, if the vehicle has this feature.

The RSE system always transmits the audio signal to the wireless headphones, if there is audio available. See “Headphones” earlier in this section for more information.

The DVD player is capable of outputting audio to the wired headphone jacks on the RSA system, if the vehicle has this feature. The DVD player can be selected as an audio source on the RSA system. See *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System on page 7-47* for more information.

When a device is connected to the A/V jacks, or the radio's auxiliary input jack if the vehicle has this feature, the rear seat passengers are able to hear audio from the auxiliary device through the wireless or wired headphones. The front seat passengers are able to listen to playback from this device through the vehicle speakers by selecting AUX as the source on the radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Video Screen

The video screen is located in the overhead console.

To use the video screen:

1. Push the release button located on the overhead console.
2. Move the screen to the desired position.

When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its locked position.

If a DVD is playing and the screen is raised to its locked position, the screen remains on. This is normal, and the DVD continues to play through the previous audio source. Use the remote control power button or eject the disc to turn off the screen.

The overhead console contains the infrared transmitters for the wireless headphones and the infrared receivers for the remote control. They are located at the rear of the console.

Notice: **Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage may occur. See "Cleaning the Video Screen" later in this section for more information.**

Remote Control

To use the remote control, aim it at the transmitter window at the rear of the RSE overhead console and press the desired button. Direct sunlight or very bright light could affect the ability of the RSE transmitter to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries might need to be replaced. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Objects blocking the line of sight could also affect the function of the remote control.

If a CD or DVD is in the Radio DVD slot, the remote control ⏻ (power) button can be used to turn on the video screen display and start the disc. The radio can also turn on the video screen display. See *Operation on page 7-2* for more information.

Notice: **Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight can damage it, and the repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the remote control becomes lost or damaged, a new universal remote control can be purchased. If this happens, make sure the universal remote control uses a code set of Toshiba®.

Remote Control Buttons

⏻ **(Power):** Press this button to turn the video screen on and off.

☼ **(Illumination):** Press this button to turn the remote control backlight on. The backlight automatically times out after 7 to 10 seconds if no other button is pressed while the backlight is on.

(Title): Press this button to return the DVD to the main menu of the DVD. This function could vary for each disc.

(Main Menu): Press this button to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the navigation arrows to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when using a DVD.

▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ **(Menu Navigation Arrows):** Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

(Enter): Press this button to select the choice that is highlighted in any menu.

(Display Menu): Press this button to adjust the brightness, screen display mode (normal, full, or zoom), and display the language menu.

(Return): Press this button to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button operates only when the display menu or a DVD menu is active.

■ **(Stop):** Press this button to stop playing, fast reversing, or fast forwarding a DVD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

▶‖ **(Play/Pause):** Press this button to start playing a DVD. Press this button while a DVD is playing to pause it. Press it again to continue playing the DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-44 Infotainment System

While the DVD is playing, the DVD can be played slowly by pressing the play/pause button then pressing the fast forward button. The DVD continues playing in a slow play mode. Also, reverse can be played slowly by pressing the play/pause button and then pressing the fast reverse button. To cancel slow play mode, press the play/pause button.

(Previous Track/Chapter): Press this button to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press this button again to go to the previous track or chapter. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Next Track/Chapter): Press this button to go to the beginning of the next chapter or track. This button might not work while the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Fast Reverse): Press this button to quickly reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing a DVD video, press the play/pause button. To stop fast reversing a DVD audio or CD, release the fast reverse button. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Fast Forward): Press this button to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding a DVD video, press the play/pause button. To stop fast forwarding a DVD audio or CD, release the fast forward button. This button might not work while the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Audio): Press this button to change audio tracks on DVDs that have this feature when the DVD is playing. The format and content of this function vary for each disc.

(Subtitles): Press this button to turn on or off subtitles and to move through subtitle options when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function vary for each disc.

AUX (Auxiliary): Press this button to switch the system between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

(Camera): Press this button to change camera angles on DVDs that have this feature while a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function vary for each disc.

1 through 0 (Numeric Keypad): The numeric keypad provides the capability of direct chapter or track number selection.

(Clear): Press this button within three seconds after entering a numeric selection, to clear all numerical inputs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

≧ **10 (Double Digit Entries):** Press this button to select chapter or track numbers greater than nine. Press this button before entering the number.

Battery Replacement

To change the remote control batteries, do the following:

1. Slide the rear cover back on the remote control.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment. Make sure they are installed correctly using the diagram on the inside of the remote control.
3. Replace the battery cover.

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Tips and Troubleshooting Chart

Problem	Recommended Action
There is no power.	The ignition might not be turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.
The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or on both sides, or the picture looks stretched out.	Check the display mode settings in the setup menu by pressing the display menu button on the remote control.
In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls.	Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
The remote control does not work.	Check to make sure there is no obstruction between the remote control and the transmitter window. Check the batteries to make sure they are not dead or installed incorrectly.
After stopping the player, and pushing Play, sometimes the DVD starts where it left off and sometimes at the beginning.	If the stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player resumes playing where the DVD was stopped. If the stop button was pressed two times, the DVD player begins to play from the beginning of the DVD.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tips and Troubleshooting Chart (cont'd)

Problem	Recommended Action
The auxiliary source is running, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is in the auxiliary source mode. Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes.	Check for obstructions, low batteries, reception range, and interference from cellular telephone towers, or use a cellular telephone in the vehicle. Check that the headphones are on correctly using the L (left) and R (right) on the headphones.
The remote and/or the headphones are lost.	See your dealer for assistance.
The DVD is playing, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is sourced to the DVD player.

DVD Display Error Messages

The DVD display error message depends on the radio that is in the vehicle. The video screen can display one of the following:

Disc Load/Eject Error: This message displays when there are disc load or eject problems.

Disc Format Error: This message displays if the disc is inserted with the disc label wrong side up, or if the disc is damaged.

Disc Region Error: This message displays if the disc is not from a correct region.

No Disc Inserted: This message displays if no disc is present when EJECT or DVD AUX is pressed on the radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DVD Distortion

Video distortion can occur when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Position Systems (GPS)*, two-way radios, mobile fax machines, or walkie talkies.

It might be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

*Excludes the OnStar® System.

Cleaning the RSE Overhead Console

When cleaning the RSE overhead console surface, use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water.

Cleaning the Video Screen

When cleaning the video screen, use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water. Use care when directly touching or cleaning the screen, as damage could result.

Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System

Vehicles with this feature allow the rear seat passengers to listen to and control any of the music sources: radio, CDs, DVDs, or other auxiliary sources. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the music sources the front seat passengers are not listening to (except on some radios where dual control is allowed). For example, rear seat passengers can control and listen to a CD through the headphones, while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

The radio functionality is controlled by both the RSA and the front radio. Only one band can be tuned to at one time. Changing the band on the RSA or the front radio will change the band on the other system, if they are both sourced to the radio.

The RSA functions can be used even while the main radio is off. The front audio system will display the headphone icon when the RSA is on, and it will disappear from the display when the RSA is off.

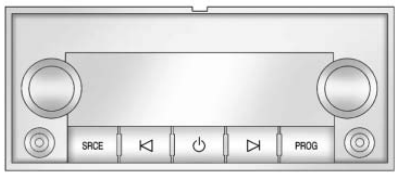
Audio can be heard through wired headphones (not included) plugged into the jacks on the RSA. If the vehicle has this feature, audio can also be heard on Channel 2 of the wireless headphones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7-48 Infotainment System

Depending on the audio system, the rear speakers may continue to play when the RSA audio is active through the headphones.

To listen to an iPod or portable audio device through the RSA, attach the iPod or portable audio device to the front auxiliary input (if available), located on the front audio system. Turn the iPod on, then choose the front auxiliary input with the RSA SRCE button.



(Power): Press this button to turn the RSA on or off.

Volume: Turn the volume knob to increase or decrease the volume of the wired headphones. The left knob controls the left headphones and the right knob controls the right headphones.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the radio (AM-FM), XM™ (if equipped), CD, and if the vehicle has these features, DVD, front auxiliary, and rear auxiliary.

(Seek): When listening to FM, AM, or XM™ (if equipped), press the seek arrows to go to the previous or to the next station or channels and stay there. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

Press and hold either seek arrow until the display flashes, to tune to an individual station. The display stops flashing after the buttons have not been pushed for more than two seconds. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While listening to a disc, press the left seek arrow to go back to the start of the current track or chapter (if more than 10 seconds have played). Press the right seek arrow to go the next track or chapter on the disc. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

While a DVD video menu is being displayed, press either seek arrow to perform a cursor up or down on the menu. Hold either seek arrow to perform a cursor left or right on the menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PROG (Program): Press this button to go to the next preset radio station or channel set on the main radio. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

While a CD or DVD-A disc is playing, press this button to go to the beginning of the CD or DVD-A. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the CD or DVD-A.

While a disc is playing in the CD or DVD changer, press this button to select the next disc, if multiple discs are loaded. This function is inactive, with some radios, if the front seat passengers are listening to the disc.

While a DVD video menu is being displayed, press the PROG button to perform the menu function, Enter.

Phone

Bluetooth

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The system can be used while the key is in the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions, and not all phones are guaranteed to work with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See www.gm.com/bluetooth for more information on compatible phones.

Voice Recognition

The Bluetooth system uses voice recognition to interpret voice commands to dial phone numbers and name tags.

For additional information, say “Help” while you are in a voice recognition menu.

Noise: Keep interior noise levels to a minimum. The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A short tone sounds after the system responds indicating when it is waiting for a voice command. Wait until the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the audio system volume knob, during a call, to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. To prevent missed calls, a minimum volume level is used if the volume is turned down too low.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons located on the steering wheel to operate the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-3* for more information.

(Push To Talk): Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start speech recognition.

(Phone On Hook): Press to end a call, reject a call, or cancel an operation.

Pairing

A Bluetooth cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, if available. Refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

Pairing Information

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired to the system. To connect to a different paired phone, see “Connecting to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Pair.” The system responds with instructions and a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). The PIN is used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone that you want to pair. For help with this process, see your cell phone manufacturer's user guide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN number that was provided in Step 3. After the PIN is successfully entered, the system prompts you to provide a name for the paired cell phone. This name will be used to indicate which phones are paired and connected to the vehicle. See “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones” later in this section for more information.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all cell phones paired to it. If a paired cell phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “List.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name you want to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Delete.” The system asks which phone to delete.
4. Say the name of the phone you want to delete.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different cell phone, the Bluetooth system looks for the next available cell phone in the order in which all the available cell phones were paired. Depending on which cell phone you want to connect to, you may have to use this command several times.

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say “Bluetooth”.
3. Say “Change phone.”
   - If another cell phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected.”
   - If another cell phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers

The system can store up to 30 phone numbers as name tags in the Hands-Free Directory that is shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The following commands are used to delete and store phone numbers.

Command	Usage
Store	This command will store a phone number, or a group of numbers as a name tag.
Digit Store	This command allows a phone number to be stored as a name tag by entering the digits one at a time.
Delete	This command is used to delete individual name tags.
Delete All Name Tags	This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the OnStar Turn-by-Turn Destinations Directory.

Using the "Store" Command

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Store."
3. Say the phone number or group of numbers you want to store all at once with no pauses, then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the "Digit Store" Command

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say "Clear" at any time to clear the last number.
To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say "Verify" at any time.

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Digit Store."
3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to store. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Store," and then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the "Delete" Command

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Delete."
3. Say the name tag you want to delete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the "Delete All Name Tags" Command

This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the OnStar Turn-by-Turn Destinations Directory.

To delete all name tags:

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Delete all name tags."

Listing Stored Numbers

The list command will list all stored numbers and name tags.

Using the "List" Command

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Directory."
3. Say "Hands-Free Calling."
4. Say "List."

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Command	Usage
Dial or Call	The dial or call command can be used interchangeably to dial a phone number or a stored name tag.
Digit Dial	This command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.
Re-dial	This command is used to dial the last number used on the cell phone.

Using the "Dial" or "Call" Command

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call."
3. Say the entire number without pausing, or say the name tag.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Digit Dial" Command

The digit dial command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone.

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say "Clear" at any time to clear the last number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say "Verify" at any time.

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say "Digit Dial."
3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to dial. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Dial."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Re-dial" Command

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. After the tone, say "Re-dial."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press to answer the call.
- Press to ignore a call.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, no action is required.
- Press to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

1. While on a call, press .
2. Say "Three-way call."
3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press to link all callers together.

Ending a Call

Press to end a call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

- To mute a call, press , and then say “Mute call.”
- To cancel mute, press , and then say “Un-mute call.”

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

The cell phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

Transferring Audio from the Bluetooth System to a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press .
2. Say “Transfer Call.”

Transferring Audio to the Bluetooth System from a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press . The audio transfers to the vehicle. If the audio does not transfer to the vehicle, use the audio transfer feature on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for more information.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature.

To access contacts stored in the cell phone:

1. Press and hold for two seconds.
2. Say “Bluetooth.” The system responds “Bluetooth ready,” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Voice.” The system responds “OK, accessing <phone name>.”

The cell phone's normal prompt messages will go through their cycle according to the phone's operating instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The Bluetooth system can send numbers and the numbers stored as name tags during a call. You can use this feature when calling a menu-driven phone system. Account numbers can also be stored for use.

Sending a Number or Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial.”
3. Say the number or name tag to send.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phone book and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the previou section “Deleting a Paired Phone” and the previous sections on deleting name tags.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-18* for FCC information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Controls

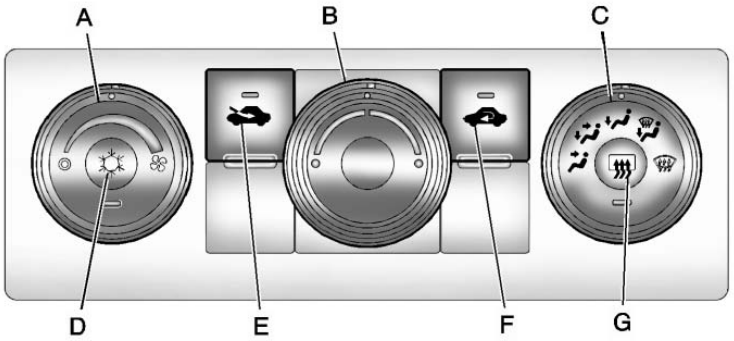
Climate Control Systems
Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning) 8-1
Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only) 8-4
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 8-5

Air Vents
Air Vents 8-11

Climate Control Systems

Climate Control Systems (with Air Conditioning)

With this system the heating, cooling, and ventilation can be controlled.



A. Fan Control
B. Temperature Control
C. Air Delivery Mode Control
D. Air Conditioning
E. Outside Air
F. Recirculation
G. Rear Window Defogger

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8-2 Climate Controls

Temperature Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

(Fan Control): Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. Turn the knob all the way counterclockwise to turn the front system off.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to change the direction of the airflow inside the vehicle. The knob can be positioned between two modes to select a combination of those modes.

Select from the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air directed to the windshield and side window outlets. In this mode, the system automatically selects outside air. Recirculation cannot be selected in floor mode.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, floor outlets, and side window vents.

(Defrost): This mode removes fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and the side window vents, with some air directed to the floor vents. The system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle.

The recirculation mode cannot be selected in the defog or defrost mode. When either mode is selected, the system runs the air conditioning compressor, unless the outside temperature is close to freezing.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

(Outside Air): Press to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light comes on to show that outside air is on. In this mode outside air circulates throughout the vehicle. The outside air mode can be used with all modes, but it cannot be used with the recirculation mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on. An indicator light comes on to show that recirculation is on.

This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to help prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

The recirculation mode cannot be used with floor, defog or defrost modes. If recirculation is selected with one of these modes, the indicator light flashes three times and then turns off. While in recirculation mode the windows may fog when the weather is cold and damp. To clear the fog, select either the defog or defrost mode and increase the fan speed.

The recirculation mode can be turned off by pressing the outside air button, or by turning off the ignition.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is on. The air conditioning can be selected in any mode as long as the fan switch is on.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

Rear Window Defogger

For vehicles with a rear window defogger, a warming grid is used to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear): Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

The rear window defogger only works when the ignition is in ON/RUN. The rear window defogger stays on for approximately 10 minutes after the button is pressed, unless the ignition is turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF. The defogger can also be turned off by turning off the engine.

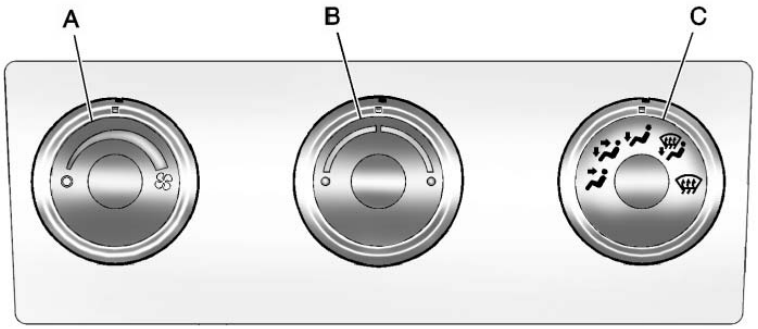
Notice: **Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8-4 Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems (with Heater Only)

With this system the heating and ventilation can be controlled.



A. Fan Control

B. Temperature Control

C. Air Delivery Mode Control

Temperature Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle.

(Fan Control): Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. Turn the knob all the way counterclockwise to turn the front system off.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature inside the vehicle. The knob can be positioned between two modes to select a combination of those modes.

Select from the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air directed to the windshield, side window, and second row floor outlets. In this mode, the system automatically selects outside air.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, floor outlets, and side window vents.

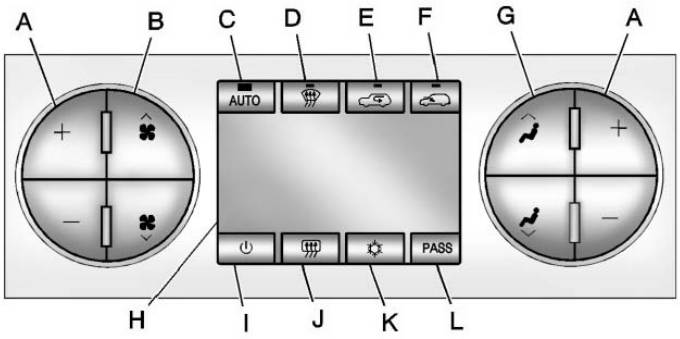
(Defrost): This mode removes fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and the side window vents, with some air directed to the floor vents. The system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation in the vehicle can be controlled with this system. The vehicle also has a flow-through ventilation system described later in this section.



A. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
B. Fan Control
C. AUTO
D. Defrost
E. Recirculation
F. Outside Air
G. Air Delivery Mode Control
H. Display
I. On/Off
J. Rear Window Defogger
K. Air Conditioning
L. PASS (Passenger)

(On/Off): Press to turn the climate control system on or off. Outside air still enters the vehicle, and is directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. Recirculation can be selected once you have selected vent or bi-level mode. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature button. If the air delivery mode or temperature settings are adjusted with the system off, the display illuminates briefly to show the settings and then returns to off. The system can be turned back on by pressing either , , , , the defrost or the AUTO button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver and Passenger Side Temperature Controls

The driver and passenger side temperature buttons are used to adjust the temperature of the air coming through the system on the driver or passenger side of the vehicle. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air always flows through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See “Recirculation” later in this section.

Press the + or − buttons to increase or decrease the cabin temperature. The driver side or passenger side temperature display shows the temperature setting increasing or decreasing.

The passenger temperature setting can be set to match the driver temperature setting by pressing the PASS button and turning off the PASS indicator. When the passenger temperature setting is set different than the driver setting, the indicator on the PASS button illuminates and both the driver side and passenger side temperature displays are shown.

When in defrost mode the passenger temperature setting cannot be changed.

Automatic Operation

AUTO (Automatic): When automatic operation is active, the system controls the inside temperature, the air delivery, and the fan speed.

Use the steps below to place the entire system in automatic mode:

1. Press the AUTO button.

   When AUTO is selected, the display changes to show the current temperature(s) and AUTO is lit on the display. The current air delivery mode and fan speed are also displayed for about five seconds.

   When AUTO is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet are automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor may run when the outside temperature is above freezing. The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it is hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to the recirculate mode to help quickly cool down the air inside the vehicle. The light on the button comes on in recirculation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Set the driver and passenger temperature.

   To find your comfort setting, start with a 23°C (74°F) temperature setting and allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Use the driver or passenger temperature buttons to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If a temperature setting of 15°C (60°F) is chosen, the system remains at the maximum cooling setting. If a temperature setting of 32°C (90°F) is chosen, the system remains at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.

Do not cover the solar sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load. For more information on the solar sensor, see “Sensors” later in this section.

To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system delays turning the fan on until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Pressing the fan switch overrides this delay and changes the fan to a selected speed.

Manual Operation

(Fan Control): Press these buttons to increase or decrease the fan speed.

Pressing either fan button while in automatic control places the fan under manual control. The fan setting remains displayed and the AUTO light turns off. The air delivery mode remains under automatic control.

(Air Delivery Mode Control): Press these buttons to change the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. Repeatedly press either button until the desired mode appears on the display.

Pressing either mode button while the system is off changes the air delivery mode without turning the system on.

Pressing either mode button while in automatic control places the mode under manual control. The air delivery mode setting displays and the AUTO light turns off. The fan remains under automatic control.

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8-8 Climate Controls

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets. Some air is directed toward the windshield and side window outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some to the windshield, side window outlets, and second row floor outlets. In this mode, the system automatically selects outside air.

(Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, floor outlets, and side window vents. In this mode, the system turns off recirculation and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is close to freezing. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defrost mode.

(Defrost): This mode removes fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side window vents, with some directed to the floor vents. In this mode, the system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is close to freezing. The recirculation mode cannot be selected while in the defrost mode.

The passenger temperature control cannot be activated while in defrost mode. If the PASS button is pressed, the button indicator flashes three times and will not work. If the passenger temperature buttons are adjusted, the driver temperature indicator changes. The passenger temperature will not be displayed.

If vent, bi-level, or floor mode is selected again, the climate control system displays the previous temperature settings.

Do not drive the vehicle until all windows are clear.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning (A/C) compressor on and off. An indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is on.

If this button is pressed when the air conditioning compressor is unavailable due to outside conditions, the indicator flashes three times and then turns off. If the air conditioning is on and the outside temperature drops below a temperature which is too cool for air conditioning to be effective, the air conditioning light turns off to show that the air conditioning mode has been canceled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This helps to reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. It also helps the system to operate more efficiently.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on. An indicator light comes on to show that recirculation is on.

This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to help prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

The recirculation mode cannot be used with floor, defog, or defrost modes. If recirculation is selected with one of those modes, the indicator light flashes three times and then turns off. The air conditioning compressor also comes on when this mode is activated. While in recirculation mode, the windows may fog when the weather is cold and damp. To clear the fog, select either the defog or defrost mode and increase the fan speed.

The recirculation mode can be turned off by pressing the outside air button, or by turning off the ignition.

(Outside Air): Press to turn the outside air mode on. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that outside is on. When selected, air from outside the vehicle circulates throughout the vehicle. The recirculation mode cannot be used with the outside air mode.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear Window Defogger): For vehicles with this feature, press to turn the defogger on or off. It automatically turns off several minutes after it has been activated. The defogger can also be turned off by turning the engine off. Do not drive the vehicle until all windows are clear.

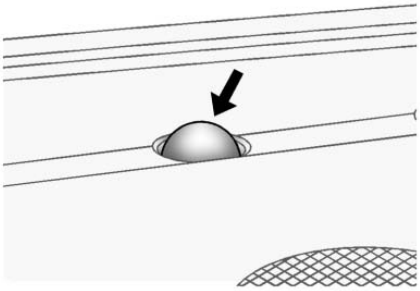
Notice: **Do not use a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window. Do not adhere anything to the defogger grid lines in the rear glass. These actions may damage the rear defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

Heated Mirror: For vehicles with heated outside rearview mirrors, the mirrors heat to help clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror when the rear window defog button is pressed. See *Power Mirrors on page 2-16*.

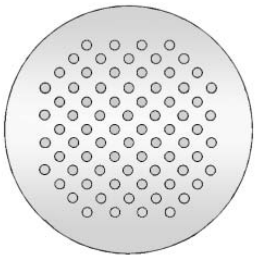
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8-10 Climate Controls

Sensors



The solar sensor, located in the defrost grille in the middle of the instrument panel, monitors the solar heat. Do not cover the solar sensor or the system will not work properly.



The interior temperature sensor, located in the headliner, measures the temperature of the air inside the vehicle.

There is also an exterior temperature sensor located behind the front grille. This sensor reads the outside air temperature and helps maintain the temperature inside the vehicle. Any cover on the front of the vehicle could cause a false reading in the displayed temperature.

The climate control system uses the information from these sensors to maintain comfort settings by adjusting the outlet temperature, fan speed, and the air delivery mode. The system may also supply cooler air to the side of the vehicle facing the sun. The recirculation mode will also be used as needed to maintain cool outlet temperatures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Vents

Use the air outlets located in the center and on the side of the instrument panel to direct the airflow. Use the thumbwheels near the air outlets to open or close off the airflow.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Defensive Driving 9-2
Drunk Driving 9-2
Control of a Vehicle 9-3
Braking 9-3
Steering 9-4
Off-Road Recovery 9-5
Loss of Control 9-6
Off-Road Driving 9-7
Driving on Wet Roads 9-18
Highway Hypnosis 9-19
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-19
Winter Driving 9-20
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-22
Vehicle Load Limits 9-23
Truck-Camper Loading Information 9-30

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In 9-32
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 9-32
Ignition Positions 9-33
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-35
Starting the Engine 9-35
Fast Idle System 9-37
Engine Coolant Heater 9-37
Shifting Into Park 9-38
Shifting Out of Park 9-40
Parking (Manual Transmission) 9-41
Parking Over Things That Burn 9-41
Active Fuel Management™ 9-41

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust 9-42
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-42

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 9-43
Manual Mode 9-47
Tow/Haul Mode 9-49

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission 9-51

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive 9-53

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-67
Parking Brake 9-68
Brake Assist (Except With 4.3L V6 Engine) 9-69
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-70

Ride Control Systems

StabiliTrak® System 9-70
Locking Rear Axle 9-73

Cruise Control

Cruise Control 9-73

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-76
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-78

Fuel

Fuel 9-83
Recommended Fuel 9-84
Gasoline Specifications 9-84
California Fuel Requirements 9-84
Fuels in Foreign Countries . . . 9-85
Fuel Additives 9-85

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) 9-86
Filling the Tank 9-88
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-89

Towing
General Towing Information 9-90
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 9-90
Trailer Towing 9-94
Towing Equipment 9-111
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 9-123

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-123
Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment 9-123
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 9-127

Driving Information

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt, see *Safety Belts on page 3-14*.

⚠ WARNING

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Drunk Driving

⚠ WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control the vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of the vehicle. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3*.

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between the vehicle and others is important.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster with a lot of heavy braking. Keeping pace with the traffic and allowing realistic following distances eliminates a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3*.

Steering

Power Steering

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the power steering system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and vehicle speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor that can be controlled.

If there is a need to reduce speed, do it before entering the curve, while the front wheels are straight.

Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. These problems can be avoided by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot stop in time because there is no room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

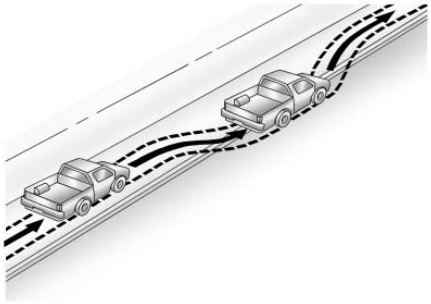
The vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First, apply the brakes. See *Braking on page 9-3*. It is better to remove as much speed as possible from a collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, it can be turned a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Off-Road Recovery

The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that the vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel 8 to 13 cm (3 to 5 inches), about one-eighth turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to the vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

If the vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, the vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance is longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You might not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Off-Road Driving

Vehicles with four-wheel drive can be used for off-road driving. Vehicles without four-wheel drive and vehicles with 20-inch tire/wheel assemblies should not be driven off-road except on a level, solid surface.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Always wear your safety belt and observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road and this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.

Off-roading can be great fun but has some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself. When off-road driving, traffic lanes are not marked, curves are not banked, and there are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill.

Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers. Failure to operate the vehicle correctly off-road could result in loss of vehicle control or vehicle rollover.

Off-roading involves some new skills. That is why it is very important that you read these driving tips and suggestions to help make off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Before You Go Off-Roading

- Have all necessary maintenance and service work done.
- Make sure there is enough fuel, that fluid levels are where they should be, and that the spare tire is fully inflated.
- Be sure to read all the information about four-wheel-drive vehicles in this manual.
- Make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached.
- Know the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving or check with law enforcement people in the area.
- Be sure to get the necessary permission if you will be on private land.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you think you will need some more ground clearance at the front of your vehicle, you can remove the front fascia lower air dam. The air dam is held in place by 2 bolts and 10 snaps accessible from underneath the front fascia.

To remove the air dam:

1. Remove the 2 outboard air dam bolts.
2. With a flat-blade tool, disengage the snaps.
3. After the bolts are removed and the snaps are disengaged, push forward on the air dam until it is free.

Notice: **Operating your vehicle for extended periods without the front fascia lower air dam installed can cause improper air flow to the engine. Always be sure to replace the front fascia air dam when you are finished off-road driving.**

After off-roading, be sure to reinstall the air dam:

1. Line up the snaps and push the air dam rearward to engage the snaps.
2. Install the 2 outboard bolts.

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ WARNING

- Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.
- Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the floor, forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is properly secured, so things are not tossed around.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You will find other important information under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* and *Tires on page 10-55*.

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving and obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage shrubs, flowers, trees, or grasses or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag and make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires (where permitted), camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Check to see if there are any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle in case something happens to one of them.

For vehicles with a winch, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck but you will want to know how to use it properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-roading requires some new and different skills.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. Use your arms, hands, feet, and body to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling the vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control the vehicle is to control the speed. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and have less time to react.
- There is less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- The vehicle has more bounce when driving over obstacles.
- More braking distance is needed, especially on an unpaved surface.

⚠ WARNING

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. Be familiar with the terrain and its many different features.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading surfaces can be hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the vehicle's steering, acceleration, and braking in different ways. Depending on the surface, slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances can occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself.

Some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill?
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When driving over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands.

When driving over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

Off-roading requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. Use good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Driving on Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what the vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, decide if it is too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you might not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Consider this as you approach a hill:

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

Driving Uphill

Once you decide it is safe to drive up the hill:

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain speed. Not using more power than needed can avoid spinning the wheels or sliding.

⚠ WARNING

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Ease up on the speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to be more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use headlamps even during the day to make the vehicle more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

If the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and you cannot make it up the hill:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards and apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is still running, shift the transmission to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in R (Reverse).
- If the engine has stopped running, you need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to P (Park) and restart the engine. Then, shift to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in R (Reverse).
- While backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position so you can tell if the wheels are straight and can maneuver as you back down. It is best to back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Things not to do if the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, when going up a hill:

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into N (Neutral) to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. The vehicle can roll backward very quickly and could go out of control.
- Never try to turn around if about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall the vehicle, it is steep enough to cause it to roll over. If you cannot make it up the hill, back straight down the hill.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If, after stalling, you try to back down the hill and decide you just cannot do it, set the parking brake, put your transmission in P (Park), and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill. Do not shift the transfer case to Neutral when you leave the vehicle. Leave it in some gear.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to Neutral can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). This is because the Neutral position on the transfer case overrides the transmission. You or someone else could be injured. If you are going to leave your vehicle, set the parking brake and shift the transmission to P (Park). But do not shift the transfer case to Neutral.

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, consider:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, try to keep the vehicle headed straight down. Use a low gear so engine drag can help the brakes so they do not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping the vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

Things not to do when driving down a hill:

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down might be too steep to drive across. The vehicle could roll over.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in N (Neutral), called free-wheeling. The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicles are much more likely to stall when going uphill, but if it happens when going downhill:

1. Stop the vehicle by applying the regular brakes and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to P (Park) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

Driving Across an Incline

An off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. To decide whether to try to drive across the incline, consider the following:

⚠ WARNING

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down might be too steep to drive across. When going straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when driving across an incline, the narrower track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — might not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels which could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause the tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, the vehicle can tilt even more.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For these reasons, carefully consider whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

If you feel the vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. The best way to prevent this is to “walk the course” first, so you know what the surface is like before driving it.

Stalling on an Incline

⚠ WARNING

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

If the vehicle stalls when crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels do not get good traction. Acceleration is not as quick, turning is more difficult, and braking distances are longer.

It is best to use a low gear when in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, keep the vehicle moving so it does not get stuck.

When driving on sand, wheel traction changes. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires will tend to sink into the sand. This affects steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if the vehicle does get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause it to slide out of control.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

⚠ WARNING

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before driving through it. Do not try it if it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe — you probably will not get through. Deep water can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and the vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. If the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When going through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it might take longer to stop. See *Driving on Wet Roads on page 9-18*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage and check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

The vehicle requires more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 10-55*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ WARNING

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 9-67* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be in a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ WARNING

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING (Continued)

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-42*.

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (Carbon Monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Vehicle is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See “Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out” later in this section.

If the vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to the vehicle's traction system in the Index. If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 55 km/h (35 mph) as shown on the speedometer.

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 10-81*.

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. For four-wheel-drive vehicles, shift into Four-Wheel High. For vehicles with StabiliTrak®, turn the traction control part of the system off. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, or with a manual transmission, between 1 (First) or 2 (Second) and R (Reverse), spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear.

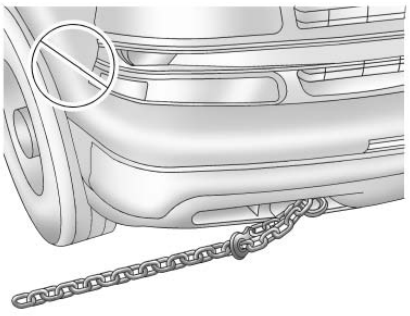
Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. Recovery hooks can be used, if the vehicle has them. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*.

Recovery Hooks

⚠ WARNING

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Notice: **Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.**

For vehicles with recovery hooks at the front of the vehicle, you can use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.

Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it was designed to carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

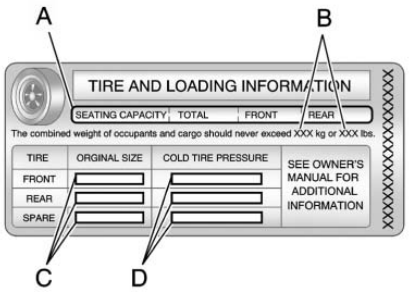
⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way the vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-24 Driving and Operating

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 10-55* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*.

There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/Tire Label” later in this section.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

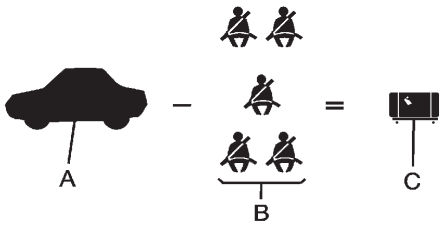
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400−750 (5x150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. See *Trailer Towing on page 9-94* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.

Example 1

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = (453 kg) (1,000 lbs)
B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs)
C. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-26 Driving and Operating

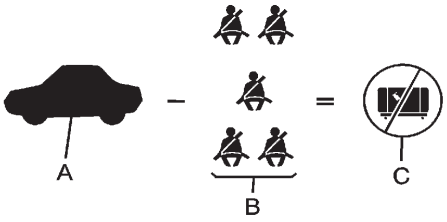


Example 2

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs)

C. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs)



Example 3

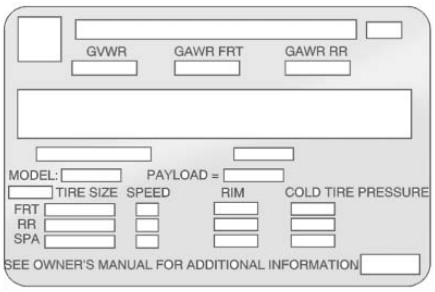
A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

C. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs)

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification/Tire Label



A vehicle specific Certification/ Tire label is found on the rear edge of the driver door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The label shows the size of your vehicle's original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle. This is called Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

The Certification/Tire label also contains important information about your Front Axle Reserve Capacity. See "What is front axle reserve capacity, and how do I calculate it?" under *Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment on page 9-123*.

⚠ WARNING

In the case of a sudden stop or collision, things carried in the bed of your truck could shift forward and come into the passenger area, injuring you and others. If you put things in the bed of your truck, you should make sure they are properly secured.

⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way the vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Notice : **Overloading the vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not overload the vehicle.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ WARNING

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See “Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving“ under *Off-Road Driving on page 9-7*.

Two-Tiered Loading

Depending on the model of your pick-up, an upper load platform can be created by positioning three or four 5 cm (2 inches) by 15 cm (6 inches) wooden planks across the width of the pickup box. The planks must be inserted in the pickup box depressions.

When using this upper load platform, be sure the load is securely tied down to prevent it from shifting. The load's center of gravity should be positioned in a zone over the rear axle. The zone is located in the area between the front of each wheel well and the rear of each wheel well. The center of gravity height must not extend above the top of the pickup box flareboard.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Any load that extends beyond the vehicle's taillamp area must be properly marked according to local laws and regulations.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

Add-On Equipment

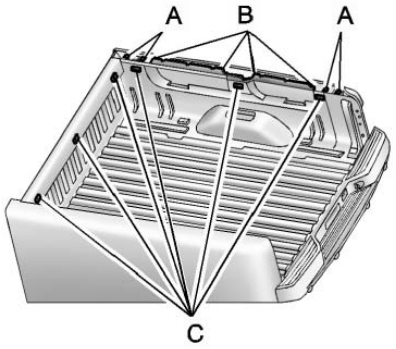
When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

Notice : **Overloading the vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not overload the vehicle.**

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

* Equipment	Maximum Weight
Ladder Rack and Cargo	340 kg (750 lbs)
Cross Toolbox and Cargo	181 kg (400 lbs)
Side Boxes and Cargo	113 kg per side (250 lbs per side)
* The combined weight for all rail-mounted equipment should not exceed 454 kg (1,000 lbs).	

Loading Points



A. Primary Load Points

B. Secondary Load Areas

C. Cargo Management Option Holes

Structural members (A) and (B) are included in the pick-up box design. Additional accessories should use these load points. Depending on the accessory design, use a spacer under the accessory at the load points to remove gap. The holes for the Cargo Management System (C) are not intended for attachment of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aftermarket equipment. See www.gmupfitter.com for additional pick-up box load bearing structural information.

Truck-Camper Loading Information

A vehicle-specific Truck-Camper Loading Information label is attached to the inside of the vehicle's glove box. This label indicates if a slide-in camper can be carried, how much of a load the vehicle can carry, and how to correctly spread out the load. It will help to match the right slide in camper to the vehicle.

Your dealer can help make a good vehicle-camper match and help determine the Cargo Weight Rating (CWR).

When installing and loading a slide-in camper, check the manufacturer's instructions.

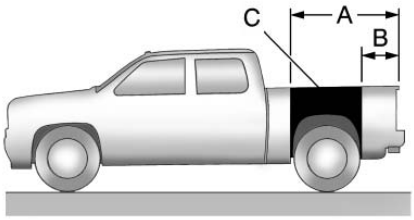
When carrying a slide-in camper, the total cargo load of the vehicle is the weight of the camper, plus the following:

- Everything added to the camper after it left the factory
- Everything in the camper
- All the people inside

The CWR is the maximum weight of the load the vehicle can carry. It does not include the weight of the people inside. But, use about 68 kg (150 lbs) for each seat.

The total cargo load must not be more than the vehicle's CWR.

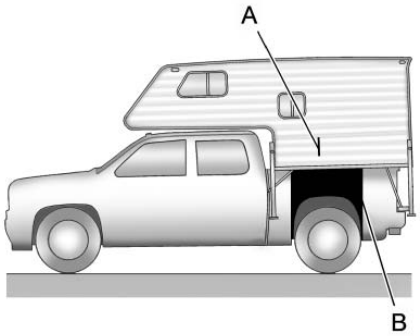
Refer to the Truck-Camper Loading Information label in the glove box for dimensions A and B as shown in the following illustration.



Use the rear edge of the load floor for measurement purposes. The recommended location for the cargo center of gravity is at point C for the CWR. It is the point where the mass of a body is concentrated and, if suspended at that point, would balance the front and rear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here is an example of proper truck and camper match:



A. Camper Center of Gravity

B. Recommended Center of Gravity Location Zone

When the truck is used to carry a slide-in camper, the total cargo load of the truck consists of the manufacturer's camper weight figure, the weight of installed additional camper equipment not included in the manufacturer's camper weight figure, the weight of camper cargo, and the weight of passengers in the camper. The total cargo load should not exceed the truck's cargo weight rating, and the camper's center of gravity (A) should fall within the truck's recommended center of gravity zone (B) when installed.

Any accessories or other equipment that are added to the vehicle must be weighed. Then, subtract this extra weight from the CWR. This extra weight may shorten the center of gravity zone of the vehicle.

If the slide-in camper and its load weighs less than the CWR, the center of gravity zone for your vehicle may be larger.

Secure loose items to prevent weight shifts that could affect the balance of the vehicle. When the truck-camper is loaded, drive to a scale and weigh on the front and on the rear wheels separately to determine axle loads. Individual axle loads should not exceed either of the gross axle weight ratings (GAWR). The total axle loads should not exceed your vehicle's gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR). These ratings are given on the vehicle certification label attached to the rear edge of the driver door. See “Certification/Tire Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*. If weight ratings are exceeded, move or remove items to bring all weights below the ratings.

See your dealer for more information on curb weights, cargo weights, Cargo Weight Rating and the correct center of gravity zone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

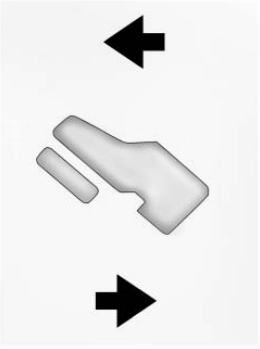
- **Keep your speed at 88 km/h (55 mph) or less for the first 805 km (500 miles).**
- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 805 km (500 miles). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 322 km (200 miles) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Trailer Towing on page 9-94* for the trailer towing capabilities of the vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

On vehicles with this feature, you can change the position of the throttle and brake pedals.

No adjustment to the pedals can be made when the vehicle is in R (Reverse) or while using cruise control.



The control used to adjust the pedals is located on the instrument panel below the climate control system.

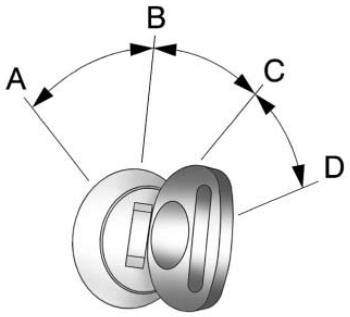
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the bottom of the control to move the pedals closer. Press the top of the control to move the pedals away.

Before you start driving, fully press the brake pedal to confirm the adjustment is right for you. While driving, make only small adjustments.

The vehicle may have a memory function which lets pedal settings be saved and recalled. See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Ignition Positions



The ignition switch has four different positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal must be applied.

A (STOPPING THE ENGINE/ LOCK/OFF): When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-35* for more information.

This position locks the ignition. It also locks the transmission on automatic transmission vehicles. The key can be removed in LOCK/OFF.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-34 Driving and Operating

In an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to neutral. This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to neutral, firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*

On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

The steering can bind with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer.**

B (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position lets things like the radio and the windshield wipers operate while the engine is off. Use this position if the vehicle must be pushed or towed.

C (ON/RUN): This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster warning and indicator lights. The switch stays in this position when the engine is running. The transmission is also unlocked in this position on automatic transmission vehicles.

If you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off, the battery could be drained. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch returns to ON/RUN for driving.

If the vehicle is equipped with a radio, a warning tone will sound when the driver door is opened, the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF and the key is in the ignition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- OnStar® System (if equipped)
- Sunroof (if equipped)

These features work when the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY. Once the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF, the windows and sunroof continue to work up to 10 minutes until any door is opened. The radio continues to work for up to 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

Starting the Engine

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in N (Neutral) and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal down to the floor and start the engine. The vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

   When the Low Fuel warning lamp is on and the FUEL LEVEL LOW message is displayed in the Driver Information Center (DIC), the Computer-Controlled Cranking System is disabled to prevent possible vehicle component damage. When this happens, hold the ignition switch in the START position to continue engine cranking.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below −18°C or 0°F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fast Idle System

If the vehicle has this feature it is available only with cruise control. The manual fast idle switch is operated using the cruise control buttons located on the left hand side of the steering wheel.

This system can be used to increase engine idle speed whenever the following conditions are met:

- The park brake is set.
- The brake pedal is not pressed.
- The vehicle must not be moving and the accelerator must not be pressed.

To control the fast idle:

- To enable the Fast Idle System, press and release the Cruise Control On/Off button and ensure that the switch LED is lit.
- Press and release the Cruise Control Set switch. Engine speed will be held at approximately 1200 RPM.

When the fast idle is active the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display “FAST IDLE ON.”

One of the following actions will turn off the fast idle:

- Pressing the brake.
- Selecting the Cruise Control Cancel button.
- Releasing the Parking Brake.
- The transmission shifter is moved out of P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- Selecting the Cruise Control On/Off button when it was previously on.
- Pressing the Cruise Control Set switch a second time.
- Pressing the accelerator greater than a quarter of the down.
- Turning the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position.

Engine Coolant Heater

The engine heater can provide easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up in cold weather conditions at or below −18°C (0°F). Vehicles with an engine heater should be plugged in at least four hours before starting. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above −18°C (0°F).

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel supplement for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is secured to the Engine Compartment Fuse Block with a clip. Carefully remove the wire tie which bundles the electrical plug. Do not cut the electrical cord.
3. Plug the cord into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ WARNING

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

Shifting Into Park

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. With four-wheel drive, if the transfer case is in N (Neutral), the vehicle will be free to roll, even if the shift lever is in P (Park). So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral). If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake.

   See *Parking Brake on page 9-68* for more information.
2. Move the shift lever into the P (Park) position by pulling the shift lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral).
4. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set.

If you have four-wheel drive and the transfer case is in N (Neutral), the vehicle will be free to roll, even if the shift lever is in P (Park). So be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral).

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running unless you have to.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you move the shift lever into P (Park), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift your transmission into P (Park) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of P (Park). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park) properly before you leave the driver seat. To find out how, *Shifting Into Park on page 9-38*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of P (Park) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, then you will be able to pull the shift lever out of P (Park).

Shifting Out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in P (Park) with the shift lever button fully released.
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 10-96* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park) use the following:

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Ease the pressure on the shift lever.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever all the way into P (Park).
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you are still having a problem shifting, then have the vehicle serviced soon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking (Manual Transmission)

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before you get out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse), and firmly apply the parking brake. Once the shift lever has been placed into R (Reverse) with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF, remove the key and release the clutch.

If you are parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ WARNING

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Active Fuel Management™

Vehicles with V8 engines may have Active Fuel Management™. This system allows the engine to operate on either all or half of its cylinders, depending on the driving conditions. When less power is required, such as cruising at a constant vehicle speed, the system will operate in the half cylinder mode, allowing the vehicle to achieve better fuel economy. When greater power demands are required, such as accelerating from a stop, passing, or merging onto a freeway, the system will maintain full-cylinder operation.

If the vehicle has an Active Fuel Management™ indicator, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* for more information on using this display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Exhaust

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle's exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or after-market modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-42*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

⚠ WARNING

Four-wheel drive vehicles with the transfer case in N (Neutral) will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission shift lever is in P (Park). So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral). Always set the parking brake.

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-38*.

If pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.

Automatic Transmission

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission have an electronic shift position indicator within the instrument panel cluster. This display comes on when the ignition key is turned to the ON/RUN position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-44 Driving and Operating

There are several different positions for the shift lever.

Hydra-Matic® 4-Speed Automatic Transmission

Heavy Duty 6-Speed Automatic Transmission Shown (Light Duty 6-Speed Similar)

See "Range Selection Mode" under *Manual Mode on page 9-47*.

P (Park): This position locks the rear wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily. When parked on a hill, especially when the vehicle has a heavy load, you might notice an increase in the effort to shift out of P (Park). See "Torque Lock" under *Shifting Into Park on page 9-38* for more information.

⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground,

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-38*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.

⚠ WARNING

If you have Four-Wheel Drive, the vehicle will be free to roll — even if the shift lever is in P (Park) — if the transfer case is in Neutral. So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, Two-Wheel Drive High or Four-Wheel Drive High or Four-Wheel Drive Low — not in Neutral. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-38*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If the Vehicle is Stuck on page 9-22*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 55 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 55 km/h (35 mph) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

  By doing this, the vehicle shifts down to the next gear and has more power.

D (Drive) can be used when towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, driving on steep hills, or for off-road driving. You might want to shift the transmission to a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-46 Driving and Operating

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding. See “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 9-6*.

The vehicle has a shift stabilization feature that adjusts the transmission shifting to the current driving conditions in order to reduce rapid upshifts and downshifts. This shift stabilization feature is designed to determine, before making an upshift, if the engine is able to maintain vehicle speed by analyzing things such as vehicle speed, throttle position, and vehicle load. If the shift stabilization feature determines that a current vehicle speed cannot be maintained, the transmission does not upshift and instead holds the current gear. In some cases, this could appear to be a delayed shift, however the transmission is operating normally.

The transmission uses adaptive shift controls. Adaptive shift controls continually compares key shift parameters to pre-programmed ideal shifts stored in the transmissions computer. The transmission constantly makes adjustments to improve vehicle performance according to how the vehicle is being used, such as with a heavy load or when temperature changes. During this adaptive shift control process, shifting might feel different as the transmission determines the best settings.

When temperatures are very cold, the Allison Transmission and Hydra-Matic 6-Speed transmission's gear shifting could be delayed providing more stable shifts until the engine warms up. Shifts could be more noticeable with a cold transmission. This difference in shifting is normal.

M (Manual Mode): This position is available on vehicles with the Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed transmission. It lets drivers select the range of gears appropriate for current driving conditions. If the vehicle has this feature, see “Range Selection Mode” under *Manual Mode on page 9-47*.

3 (Third): This position is also used for normal driving. It reduces vehicle speed more than D (Drive) without using the brakes. You might choose 3 (Third) instead of D (Drive) when driving on hilly, winding roads, when towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears and when going down a steep hill.

2 (Second): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than 3 (Third) without using the brakes. You can use 2 (Second) on hills. It can help control vehicle speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use the brakes off and on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you manually select 2 (Second) in an automatic transmission, the transmission will start in second gear. You can use this feature for reducing the speed of the rear wheels when you are trying to start the vehicle from a stop on slippery road surfaces.

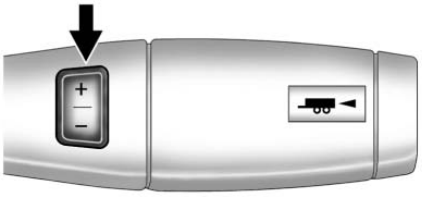
1 (First): For the Hydra-Matic 4-Speed transmission this position reduces vehicle speed even more than 2 (Second) without using the brakes. You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in 1 (First) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission does not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

For an Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed transmission, this position reduces vehicle speed without using the brakes. You can use it for major/severe downgrades and off-road driving where the vehicle would otherwise accelerate due to steepness of grade. When you shift to 1 (First) it provides the lowest gear appropriate to current road speed and continues to downshift as the vehicle slows, eventually downshifting to 1 (First) gear.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

Manual Mode

Range Selection Mode (Allison® Transmission or Hydra-Matic® 6-Speed Transmission)



The vehicle may have a Range Selection Mode. The Range Selection Mode helps control the vehicle's transmission and vehicle speed while driving down hill or towing a trailer by letting you select a desired range of gears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use this feature, do the following:

1. Move the shift lever to M (Manual Mode).
2. Press the plus/minus buttons, located on the steering column shift lever, to select the desired range of gears for current driving conditions.

When M (Manual Mode) is selected a number displays next to the M, indicating the current gear.

This number is the highest gear that can be used. However, the vehicle can automatically shift to lower gears as it adjusts to driving conditions. This means that all gears below that number are available. When 5 (Fifth) is selected, 1 (First) through 5 (Fifth) gears are automatically shifted by the vehicle, but 6 (Sixth) cannot be used until the plus/minus button located on the steering column lever is used to change to the gear.

Grade Braking is not available when Range Selection Mode is active. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49*.

While using Range Selection Mode, Cruise Control and the Tow/Haul Mode can be used.

If the vehicle has an exhaust brake, it can also be used, but will not automatically downshift the transmission. See Exhaust Brake in the Duramax Diesel supplement.

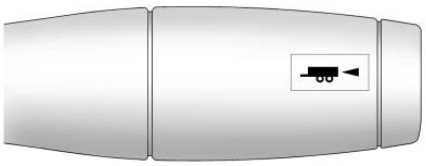
Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

Low Traction Mode

If your vehicle has the Allison Transmission, or the Hydra-Matic 6-Speed Automatic Transmission, it has a Low Traction Mode that can assist in vehicle acceleration when road conditions are slippery, such as with ice or snow. While the vehicle is at a stop, select the second gear range using Range Selection Mode. This will limit torque to the wheels after it detects wheel slip, preventing the tires from spinning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tow/Haul Mode



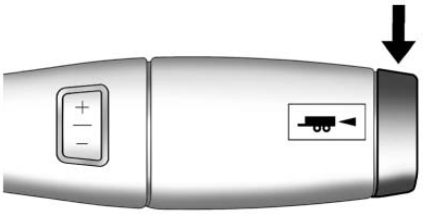
Vehicles with an automatic transmission have a Tow/Haul Mode. The Tow/Haul Mode adjusts the transmission shift pattern to reduce shift cycling, providing increased performance, vehicle control, and transmission cooling when towing or hauling heavy loads.

The selector button is located on the end of the shift lever. Turn the Tow/Haul Mode on and off by pressing the button. When the tow/haul is on, a light on the instrument panel cluster will come on.

See *Tow/Haul Mode Light on page 5-31* for more information.

Also see “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Tow/Haul Mode (Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed Automatic Transmission)



Vehicles with an Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed Automatic Transmission have a Tow/Haul Mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Tow/Haul Mode adjusts the transmission shift pattern to reduce shift cycling, providing increased performance, vehicle control, and transmission cooling when towing or hauling heavy loads.

Turn the Tow/Haul Mode on and off by pressing the button, located on the end of the shift lever. When the tow/haul is on, a light on the instrument panel cluster will come on.

See *Tow/Haul Mode Light on page 5-31* for more information.

Also see “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Grade Braking (Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed Automatic Transmission)

The Grade Braking shift modes can be activated by pressing the button on the end of the shift control lever. While in Range Selection Mode, Grade Braking is deactivated allowing the driver to select a desired range of gears.

Grade Braking is only active while the Tow/Haul Mode is selected and you are not in the Range Selection Mode. See “Tow/Haul Mode” listed previously and *Manual Mode on page 9-47* for more information on the Range Selection Mode.

Grade Braking assists in maintaining desired vehicle speeds when driving on downhill grades by automatically implementing a shift schedule that utilizes the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle. This reduces wear on the braking system and increases control of the vehicle. Grade Braking monitors vehicle speed, acceleration, engine torque and brake pedal usage. Using this information, it detects when the truck is on a downhill grade and the driver desires to slow the vehicle by pressing the brake.

This feature is active when the exhaust brake is enabled (if equipped).

Also see *Towing Equipment on page 9-111* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Grade Braking (Allison Transmission or Hydra-Matic 6-Speed Automatic Transmission)

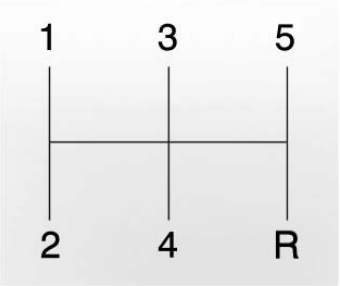
Cruise Grade Braking assists when driving on a downhill grade. It maintains vehicle speed by automatically implementing a shift schedule that uses the engine and the transmission to slow the vehicle. Cruise Grade Braking operates while Cruise Control is engaged in Tow/Haul Mode to assist in maintaining vehicle speed under loaded vehicle conditions. It utilizes vehicle acceleration and deviation from desired speed to determine the correct gear for the operating condition. If vehicle speed is above the desired speed the transmission will downshift to slow the vehicle. If vehicle speed is near or below desired speed the trans will upshift, allowing vehicle speed to increase.

While in the Range Selection Mode, Cruise Grade Braking is not available.

This feature is active when the exhaust brake is enabled (if equipped).

See “Range Selection Mode” under *Manual Mode on page 9-47*.

Manual Transmission



This is your shift pattern.

Here is how to operate the manual transmission:

1 (First): Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you slowly press down on the accelerator pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can shift into 1 (First) when you are going less than 30 km/h (20 mph). If you have come to a complete stop and it is hard to shift into 1 (First), put the shift lever in Neutral and let up on the clutch. Then press the clutch pedal back down and shift into 1 (First).

2 (Second): Press the clutch pedal as you let up on the accelerator pedal and shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

3 (Third), 4 (Fourth) and 5 (Fifth): Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth) and 5 (Fifth) the same way you do for 2 (Second). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to Neutral.

Neutral: Use this position when you start or idle the engine.

R (Reverse): To back up, press the clutch pedal. After the vehicle stops, shift into R (Reverse). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal. If it is hard to shift, let the shift lever return to Neutral and release the clutch pedal. Then press the clutch again and shift into R (Reverse). Do not attempt to shift into 5 (Fifth) prior to shifting into R (Reverse). The transmission has a lock out feature which prevents a 5 (Fifth) gear to R (Reverse) gear shift.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

Use R (Reverse), along with the parking brake, for parking the vehicle.

Shift Speeds

⚠ WARNING

If you skip a gear when you downshift, you could lose control of the vehicle. You could injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when you downshift.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle has Four-Wheel Drive, you can send the engine's driving power to all four wheels for extra traction. To get the most satisfaction out of Four-Wheel Drive, you must be familiar with its operation. Read the following before using Four-Wheel Drive. See the appropriate text for the transfer case in the vehicle.

Notice: **Driving on clean, dry pavement in Four-Wheel Drive High or Four-Wheel Drive Low for an extended period of time may cause premature wear on the vehicle's powertrain. Do not drive on clean, dry pavement in Four-Wheel Drive High or Four-Wheel Drive Low for extended periods of time.**

While driving on clean dry pavement and during tight turns, you may experience vibration in the steering system.

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak®, shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

Front Axle

The front axle engages and disengages automatically when you shift the transfer case. Some delay for the axle to engage or disengage is normal.

Manual Transfer Case

The transfer case shift lever is on the floor to the right of the driver. Use this lever to shift into and out of Four-Wheel Drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-54 Driving and Operating

A Four-Wheel Drive indicator light comes on when you shift into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages. See *Four-Wheel-Drive Light on page 5-31*.

Some delay between shifting and when the indicator light comes on is normal.

Recommended Transfer Case Settings

Driving Conditions	Transfer Case Settings			
	2↑	4↑	4↓	N
Normal	YES			
Severe		YES		
Extreme			YES	
Vehicle in Tow*				YES

*See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*.

Notice: **Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle's powertrain. Do not drive on clean, dry pavement in Four-Wheel Drive for extended periods of time.**

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Drive Low): This setting also engages the front axle and delivers extra torque. You may never need Four-Wheel Drive Low. It sends maximum power to all four wheels. You might choose Four-Wheel Drive Low if you are driving off-road in deep sand, deep mud, deep snow, and while climbing or descending steep hills.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak®, shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

A parking brake symbol is located next to the N (Neutral) symbol as a reminder to set the parking brake before shifting the transfer case into N (Neutral).

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

N (Neutral): Shift to this setting only when the vehicle needs to be towed. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*.

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel Drive High): This setting is used for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive. This setting also provides the best fuel economy.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel Drive High): Use this setting when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads or in most off-road situations. This setting also engages the front axle to help drive your vehicle. This is the best setting to use when plowing snow.

You can shift from Two-Wheel Drive High to Four-Wheel Drive High or Four-Wheel Drive High to Two-Wheel Drive High while the vehicle is moving. In extremely cold weather, it may be necessary to stop or slow the vehicle to shift into Four-Wheel Drive High.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Using the Manual Transfer Case

- Shifts into or out of Four-Wheel Drive Low or N (Neutral) should be made using quick motions to avoid excessive gear grinding. Shifting slowly may make it more difficult to shift.
- You may notice that it is harder to shift when the vehicle is cold. After the vehicle warms up the shifting will return to normal.
- While in Four-Wheel High or Four-Wheel Drive Low you may experience reduced fuel economy.
- Avoid driving in Four-Wheel Drive on clean, dry pavement. It may cause your tires to wear faster, make the transfer case harder to shift, and run noisier.
- If the transfer case shifter is in the N (Neutral) position and you have difficulty reaching the selected transfer case mode, with the engine running, shift the transmission momentarily to D (Drive) and then back to N (Neutral). This will realign the gear teeth in the transfer case and allow you to complete the shift.

Shifting from Two-Wheel Drive High to Four-Wheel Drive High

- Shifts between Two-Wheel Drive High and Four-Wheel Drive High can be made at any vehicle speed.
- Shift the transfer case lever in one continuous motion into either the Four-Wheel Drive High or Two-Wheel Drive High position.
- Shifting from Two-Wheel Drive High to Four-Wheel Drive High while the vehicle is in motion may require that moderate force be applied to the shift lever for a few seconds before Four-Wheel Drive High can be engaged, especially in cold weather.
- In extremely cold weather, it may be necessary to slow or stop the vehicle to shift into Four-Wheel Drive High.
- While in Four-Wheel Drive High, the vehicle can be driven at any posted legal speed limit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting In or Out of Four-Wheel Drive Low

Notice: **Shifting the transfer case into Four-Wheel-Drive Low while moving at speeds faster than 5 km/h (3 mph) may cause premature wear to the transfer case, and may cause the gears to grind. To avoid causing premature wear, and grinding the gears, do not shift the transfer case into Four-Wheel-Drive Low while the vehicle is moving faster than 5 km/h (3 mph).**

- Shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low should be done, if possible, with the vehicle at a slight roll, 5 km/h (3 mph) or less.
- Shift the transmission into N (Neutral).

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

- Shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low with the vehicle at a stop may be more difficult. You may be unable to complete the shift to Four-Wheel Drive Low, and the transfer case will end up in N (Neutral). This is normal, and is a function of the gear teeth aligning in the transfer case. When this happens, make sure the engine is on, shift the transmission momentarily to D (Drive) and back to N (Neutral), and then complete the transfer case shift.
- Shift the transfer case shift lever in one continuous motion into the Four-Wheel Drive Low position.
- When in Four-Wheel Drive Low do not drive faster than 72 km/h (45 mph). This will reduce wear and extend the life of your transfer case.

Shifting In or Out of Neutral

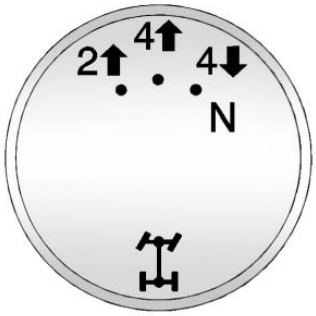
1. With the vehicle running and the engine at an idle, set the parking brake.
2. Place the transmission into N (Neutral).

Shift the transfer case in one continuous motion into or out of the N (Neutral) position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-58 Driving and Operating

Electronic Transfer Case



The transfer case knob is located next to the steering column.

Use the dial to shift into and out of four-wheel drive.

Recommended Transfer Case Settings

Driving Conditions	Transfer Case Settings			
	2↑	4↑	4↓	N
Normal	YES			
Severe		YES		
Extreme			YES	
Vehicle in Tow*				YES

*See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*.

You can choose among four driving settings:

Indicator lights in the dial show which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and one will stay on. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle to your dealer for service. An indicator light flashes while shifting the transfer case and remains illuminated when the shift is complete. If for some reason the transfer case cannot make a requested shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel Drive High): This setting is used for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in Two-Wheel Drive. This setting also provides the best fuel economy.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel Drive High): Use the Four-Wheel Drive High position when extra traction is needed, such as on snowy or icy roads or in most off-road situations. This setting also engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. This is the best setting to use when plowing snow.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Drive Low): This setting also engages the front axle and delivers extra torque. You may never need this setting. It sends maximum power to all four wheels.

You might choose Four-Wheel Drive Low while driving off-road in deep sand, deep mud, deep snow, and while climbing or descending steep hills.

If the vehicle has StabiliTrak,® shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

N (Neutral): Shift the vehicle's transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101* for more information.

If the SERVICE 4 WHEEL DRIVE message stays on, you should take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See “SERVICE 4 WHEEL DRIVE message” under *Transmission Messages on page 5-52*.

Shifting Into Two-Wheel Drive High

Turn the knob to the Two-Wheel Drive High position. This can be done at any speed, except when shifting from Four-Wheel Drive Low. See “Shifting Out of Four-Wheel Drive Low” for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Into Four-Wheel Drive Low

When Four-Wheel Drive Low is engaged, vehicle speed should be kept below 72 km/h (45 mph). Extended high-speed operation in Four-Wheel Drive Low may damage or shorten the life of the drivetrain.

To shift to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position, the ignition must be in ON/RUN and the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral). The preferred method for shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low is to have the vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph). Turn the knob to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Drive Low indicator light to stop flashing and remain on before shifting the transmission in gear.

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

It is typical for the vehicle to exhibit significant engagement noise and bump when shifting between Four-Wheel Drive Low and Four-Wheel Drive High ranges or from transfer case N (Neutral) with the engine running.

If the knob is turned to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving, the Four-Wheel Drive Low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds and not complete the shift unless the vehicle is moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and the transmission is in N (Neutral). After 30 seconds the transfer case will shift to Four-Wheel Drive High mode.

Shifting Out of Four-Wheel Drive Low

To shift from Four-Wheel Drive Low to Four-Wheel Drive High, or Two-Wheel Drive High, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the ignition in ON/RUN. The preferred method for shifting out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is to have the vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph). Turn the knob to the Four-Wheel Drive High or Two-Wheel Drive High position. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Drive High or Two-Wheel Drive High indicator light to stop flashing and remain on before shifting the transmission into gear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

It is typical for the vehicle to exhibit significant engagement noise and bump when shifting between Four-Wheel Drive Low and Four-Wheel Drive High ranges or from transfer case N (Neutral) with the engine running.

If the knob is turned to the Four-Wheel Drive High, or Two-Wheel Drive High switch position when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving, the Four-Wheel Drive High, or Two-Wheel Drive High indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift unless your vehicle is moving less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and the transmission is in N (Neutral).

Shifting into Neutral

To shift the transfer case to N (Neutral) do the following:

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked so that it will not roll.
2. Set the parking brake and press and hold the regular brake pedal. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68* for more information.
3. Start the vehicle or turn the ignition to ON/RUN.
4. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
5. Shift the transfer case to Two-Wheel Drive High.
6. Turn the transfer case dial clockwise to N (Neutral) until it stops and hold it there until the Neutral light starts blinking. This will take at least 10 seconds. Then slowly release the dial to the four low position. The N (Neutral) light will come on when the transfer case shift to N (Neutral) is complete.
7. If the engine is running, verify that the transfer case is in N (Neutral) by shifting the transmission to R (Reverse) for one second, then shift the transmission to D (Drive) for one second.
8. Turn the ignition to ACC/ ACCESSORY, which will turn the engine off.
9. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park).
10. Release the parking brake prior to moving the vehicle.
11. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Out of Neutral

To shift the transfer case out of N (Neutral) do the following:

1. Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off, and shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
3. Turn the transfer case dial to Two-Wheel Drive High.

   After the transfer case has shifted out of N (Neutral), the N (Neutral) light will go out.
4. Release the parking brake prior to moving the vehicle.

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

5. Start the engine and shift the transmission to the desired position.

Excessively shifting the transfer case into or out of the different modes may cause the transfer case to enter the shift protection mode. This will protect the transfer case from possible damage and will only allow the transfer case to respond to one shift per 10 seconds. The transfer case may stay in this mode for up to three minutes.

Automatic Transfer Case

The transfer case knob is located next to the steering column.

Use the dial to shift into and out of Four-Wheel Drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can choose among five driving settings:

Indicator lights in the dial show which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and one will stay on. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle to your dealer for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting the transfer case. It will remain illuminated when the shift is complete. If for some reason the transfer case cannot make a requested shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel Drive High): This setting is used for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in Two-Wheel Drive. This setting also provides the best fuel economy.

AUTO (Automatic Four-Wheel Drive): This setting is ideal for use when road surface traction conditions are variable. When driving the vehicle in AUTO, the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle's power is sent only to the front and rear wheels automatically based on driving conditions. Driving in this mode results in slightly lower fuel economy than Two-Wheel Drive High.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel Drive High): Use the Four-Wheel Drive High position when extra traction is needed, such as on snowy or icy roads or in most off-road situations. This setting also engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. This is the best setting to use when plowing snow.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Drive Low): This setting also engages the front axle and delivers extra torque. You may never need this setting. It sends maximum power to all four wheels. You might choose Four-Wheel Drive Low if you are driving off-road in deep sand, deep mud, deep snow, and while climbing or descending steep hills. If the vehicle has StabiliTrak,® shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

N (Neutral): Shift the vehicle's transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the SERVICE 4 WHEEL DRIVE message stays on, you should take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See “SERVICE 4 WHEEL DRIVE message” under *Transmission Messages on page 5-52*.

Shifting Into Four-Wheel Drive High or AUTO (Automatic Four-Wheel Drive)

Turn the knob to the Four-Wheel Drive High or AUTO position. This can be done at any speed, except when shifting from Four-Wheel Drive Low. The indicator light will flash while shifting. It will remain on when the shift is completed.

Shifting Into Two-Wheel Drive High

Turn the knob to the Two-Wheel Drive High position. This can be done at any speed, except when shifting from Four-Wheel Drive Low. The indicator light will flash while shifting. It will remain on when the shift is completed.

Shifting Into Four-Wheel Drive Low

When Four-Wheel Drive Low is engaged, vehicle speed should be kept below 72 km/h (45 mph). Extended high-speed operation in Four-Wheel Drive Low may damage or shorten the life of the drivetrain.

To shift to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position, the ignition must be in ON/RUN and the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral). The preferred method for shifting into Four-Wheel Drive Low is to have the vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph). Turn the knob to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Drive Low indicator light to stop flashing and remain on before shifting the transmission into gear.

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

It is typical for the vehicle to exhibit significant engagement noise and bump when shifting between Four-Wheel Drive Low and Four-Wheel Drive High ranges or from N (Neutral) with the engine running.

If the knob is turned to the Four-Wheel Drive Low position when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving, the Four-Wheel Drive Low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds and not complete the shift unless the vehicle is moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and the transmission is in N (Neutral). After 30 seconds the transfer case will shift to Four-Wheel Drive High mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Out of Four-Wheel Drive Low

To shift from Four-Wheel Drive Low to Four-Wheel Drive High, AUTO or Two-Wheel Drive High, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the ignition in ON/RUN. The preferred method for shifting out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is to have the vehicle moving 1 to 2 mph (1.6 to 3.2 km/h). Turn the knob to the Four-Wheel Drive High, AUTO or Two-Wheel Drive High position. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Drive High, AUTO or Two-Wheel Drive High indicator light to stop flashing and remain on before shifting the transmission into gear.

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

It is typical for the vehicle to exhibit significant engagement noise and bump when shifting between Four-Wheel Drive Low and Four-Wheel Drive High ranges or from N (Neutral) with the engine running.

If the knob is turned to the Four-Wheel Drive High, AUTO, or Two-Wheel Drive High switch position when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving, the Four-Wheel Drive High, AUTO or Two-Wheel Drive High indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift unless the vehicle is moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and the transmission is in N (Neutral).

Shifting into Neutral

To shift the transfer case to N (Neutral) do the following:

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked so that it will not roll.
2. Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68* for more information.
3. Shifting the transfer case into N (Neutral) can be done with or without the engine running. Shifting without the engine running should be done with the ignition in ON/RUN.
4. Put the transmission in N (Neutral).
5. Shift the transfer case to Two-Wheel Drive High.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Turn the transfer case dial clockwise to N (Neutral) until it stops and hold it there until the N (Neutral) light starts blinking. This will take at least 10 seconds. Then slowly release the dial to the four low position. The N (Neutral) light will come on when the transfer case shift to N (Neutral) is complete.
7. If the engine is running, make sure that the transfer case is in N (Neutral) by shifting the transmission to R (Reverse) for one second, then shift the transmission to D (Drive) for one second.
8. Turn the ignition to ACC/ ACCESSORY, which will turn the engine off.
9. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park).
10. Release the parking brake prior to moving the vehicle.
11. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Shifting Out of Neutral

To shift out of N (Neutral) do the following:

1. Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off, and shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
3. Turn the transfer case dial to Two-Wheel Drive High, Four-Wheel Drive High, or AUTO.

   After the transfer case has shifted out of N (Neutral), the N (Neutral) light will go out.
4. Release the parking brake prior to moving the vehicle.

Notice: **Shifting the transmission into gear before the requested mode indicator light has stopped flashing could damage the transfer case. To help avoid damaging the vehicle, always wait for the mode indicator lights to stop flashing before shifting the transmission into gear.**

5. Start the engine and shift the transmission to the desired position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle might have the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the engine is started and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-30*.

Along with ABS, the vehicle has a Dynamic Rear Proportioning (DRP) system. If there is a DRP problem, both the brake and ABS warning lights come on accompanied by a 10-second chime. The lights and chime will come on each time the ignition is turned on until the problem is repaired. See your dealer for service.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work. You might feel the brakes vibrate or hear some noise, but this is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking in Emergencies

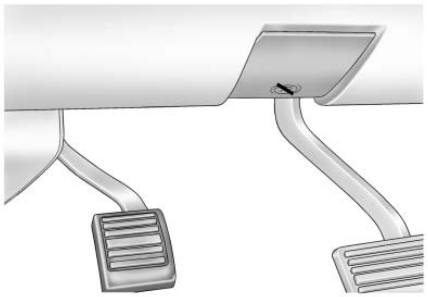
If the vehicle has ABS, it allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. However, if the vehicle does not have ABS, the first reaction, to hit the brake pedal hard and hold it down, might be the wrong thing to do. The wheels can stop rolling. Once they do, the vehicle cannot respond to the driver's steering. Momentum will carry it in whatever direction it was headed when the wheels stopped rolling. That could be off the road, into the very thing the driver was trying to avoid, or into traffic.

If the vehicle does not have ABS, use a squeeze braking technique. This gives maximum braking while maintaining steering control. Do this by pushing on the brake pedal with steadily increasing pressure.

In an emergency, you will probably want to squeeze the brakes hard without locking the wheels. If you hear or feel the wheels sliding, ease off the brake pedal. This helps retain steering control. With ABS, it is different.

In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Parking Brake



For vehicles with a release handle, set the parking brake by holding the regular brake pedal down, then pushing down the parking brake pedal.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.

A chime sounds and the warning light flashes when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 8 km/h (5 mph).

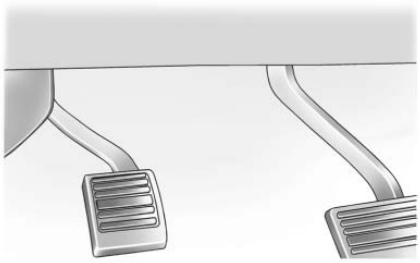
To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Then pull the bottom edge of the lever with the parking brake symbol, located above the parking brake pedal.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light goes off.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.



For vehicles without a release handle, set the parking brake by holding the regular brake pedal down, then pushing down the parking brake pedal.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release. Slowly pull your foot up off the park brake pedal. If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will flash and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-90*.

Brake Assist (Except With 4.3L V6 Engine)

If this vehicle has StabiliTrak®, it also has a Brake Assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling back. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two second window. If the vehicle is equipped with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, HSA may also apply the trailer brakes. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse). There may be situations on minor hills (less than 5% grade) with a loaded vehicle or while pulling a trailer where HSA will not activate.

Ride Control Systems

StabiliTrak® System

The vehicle may have a vehicle stability enhancement system called StabiliTrak®. It is an advanced computer-controlled system that assists the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

StabiliTrak activates when the computer senses a discrepancy between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

When the vehicle is started and begins to move, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 32 km/h (20 mph). In some cases, it may take approximately 3.2 km (2 miles) of driving before the system initializes.

If cruise control is being used when StabiliTrak activates, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-73* for more information.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the StabiliTrak light along with one of the following messages will be displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC): TRACTION CONTROL OFF, SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL, STABILITRAK OFF, SERVICE STABILITRAK. If these DIC messages appear, make sure the StabiliTrak system has not been turned off using the StabiliTrak on/off button. Then turn the vehicle off, wait 15 seconds, and turn it back on again to reset the system.

If any of these messages still appear on the DIC, the vehicle should be taken in for service. For more information on the DIC messages, see *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-49*.

The StabiliTrak light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the system is both on and activated.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working; this is normal.

The traction control disable button is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

The Traction Control System (TCS) part of StabiliTrak can be turned off by pressing and releasing the StabiliTrak button. To disable both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold until illuminates and the appropriate DIC message displays.

TCS and StabiliTrak can be turned on by pressing and releasing the StabiliTrak button if they are not automatically shut off for any other reason.

When TCS or StabiliTrak is turned off, the StabiliTrak light and the appropriate message will be displayed on the DIC to warn the driver. The vehicle will still have brake-traction control when traction control is off, but will not be able to use the engine speed management system. See “Traction Control Operation” next for more information.

When the traction control system has been turned off, system noises may still be heard as a result of the brake-traction control coming on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to "rock" the vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If the Vehicle is Stuck on page 9-22*.

When the transfer case is in 4LO, the stability system is automatically disabled, the StabiliTrak light comes on, and the STABILITRAK OFF message will appear on the DIC. Both traction control and StabiliTrak are automatically disabled in this condition.

Traction Control Operation

The traction control system is part of the StabiliTrak system. Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when the vehicle is started. It will activate and the StabiliTrak light will flash if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving. If traction control is turned off, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work. The engine speed management will be disabled. In this mode, engine power is not reduced automatically and the driven wheels can spin more freely. This can cause the brake-traction control to activate constantly.

Notice: **If the wheel(s) of one axle is allowed to spin excessively while the StabiliTrak®, ABS, brake warning lights, and any relevant DIC messages are displayed, the transfer case could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and messages are displayed.**

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens, a reduction in acceleration may be noticed, or a noise or vibration may be heard. This is normal.

If cruise control is being used when the system activates, the StabiliTrak light will flash and cruise control will automatically disengage. Cruise control may be reengaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-73*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

StabiliTrak may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer for service.

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC) on page 9-123*.

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature. See *Hill Start Assist (HSA) on page 9-70*.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3*.

Locking Rear Axle

Vehicles with a locking rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature will allow the rear wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

Cruise Control

⚠ WARNING

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

For vehicles with cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

When the brakes are applied, cruise control is turned off.

For vehicles with an Allison or Hydra-Matic 6-speed automatic transmission, see “Grade Braking and Cruise Grade Braking (Allison Transmission) under *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49* for an explanation of how cruise control interacts with the Range Selection Mode, tow/haul and grade braking systems.

For vehicles with the StabiliTrak system that begins to limit wheel spin while you are using cruise control, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-70*. When road conditions allow the cruise control to be safely used again, it can be turned back on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-74 Driving and Operating

The cruise control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator light is on when cruise control is on and turns off when cruise control is off.

+ RES (Resume/Accelerate): Press briefly to resume to a previously set speed, or press and hold to accelerate.

SET − (Set/Coast): Press to set the speed and activate cruise control or make the vehicle decelerate.

(Cancel): Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

The cruise control light on the instrument panel cluster will come on after the cruise control has been set to the desired speed.

⚠ WARNING

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press the SET− button located on the steering wheel and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, press the +RES button on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed and stays there.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated,

- Press and hold the +RES button on the steering wheel until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small amounts, press the +RES button. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated,

- Press and hold the SET– button on the steering wheel until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in small amounts, press the SET– button on the steering wheel briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. While going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. While going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- To disengage cruise control; step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press ⊠ on the steering wheel.
- To turn off the cruise control, press on the steering wheel.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing the button or if the ignition is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

For vehicles with the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system, it operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph), and assists the driver with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). The sensors on the rear bumper are used to detect the distance to an object up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind the vehicle, and at least 25.4 cm (10 in) off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

The Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system does not replace driver vision. It cannot detect:

- Objects that are below the bumper, underneath the vehicle, or too close or far from the vehicle
- Children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

If you do not use proper care before and while backing, vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Even with URPA, always check behind the vehicle before backing up. While backing, be sure to look for objects and check the vehicle's mirrors.

How the System Works

URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse). A single tone sounds to indicate the system is working.

URPA operates only at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

An obstacle is indicated by audible beeps. The interval between the beeps becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm (12 in) the beeps are continuous.

To be detected, objects must be at least 25.4 cm (10 in) off the ground and below tailgate level. Objects must also be within 2.5 m (8 ft) from the rear bumper. This distance may be less during warmer or humid weather.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The system can be disabled by pressing the rear park aid disable button located next to the radio.

The indicator light comes on and PARK ASSIST OFF displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC) to indicate that URPA is off; see *Object Detection System Messages on page 5-48*.

Notice: **If you use URPA while the tailgate is lowered, it may not detect an object behind your vehicle, and you might back into the object and damage your vehicle. Always verify the tailgate is closed when using URPA or turn off URPA when driving with the tailgate lowered.**

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be displayed on the DIC:

SERVICE PARK ASSIST: If this message occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

PARK ASSIST OFF: This message occurs if the driver disables the system.

PARK ASST BLOCKED SEE OWNERS MANUAL: This message can occur under the following conditions:

- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see “Washing the Vehicle” under *Exterior Care on page 10-106*.
- The park assist sensors are covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen; this can occur after washing the vehicle in cold weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.
- A trailer was attached to the vehicle, or a bicycle or an object was hanging out of the tailgate during the last drive cycle. Once the attached object is removed and the tailgate is raised, URPA will return to normal operation.
- A tow bar is attached to the vehicle.
- The vehicle's bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.
- Other conditions are affecting system performance. Examples of this are vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck.

If the system is still disabled after driving forward at least 40 km/h (25 mph), take the vehicle to your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

This vehicle may have a Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system. Read this entire section before using it.

⚠ WARNING

The Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system does not replace driver vision. RVC does not:

- Detect objects that are outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.
- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

Do not back the vehicle by only looking at the RVC screen, or use the screen during longer, higher speed backing maneuvers or where there could be cross-traffic.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Your judged distances using the screen will differ from actual distances.

If you do not use proper care before backing up, you could hit a vehicle, child, pedestrian, bicyclist, or pet, resulting in vehicle damage, injury, or death. Even though the vehicle has the RVC system, always check carefully before backing up by checking behind and around the vehicle.

Vehicles without Navigation System

The Rear Vision Camera system is designed to help the driver when backing up by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

When the key is in the ON/RUN position and the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image automatically appears on the inside rearview mirror. Once the driver shifts out of R (Reverse), the video image automatically disappears from the inside rearview mirror.

Turning the Rear Vision Camera System Off or On

To turn off the RVC system, press and hold ⏻, located on the inside rearview mirror, until the left indicator light turns off. The RVC display is now disabled.

To turn the RVC system on again, press and hold ⏻ until the left indicator light illuminates. The RVC system display is now enabled and the display will appear in the mirror normally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

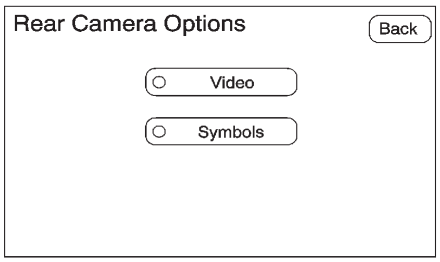
Vehicles with Navigation System

The RVC system is designed to help the driver when backing up by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. When the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image automatically appears on the navigation screen. Once the driver shifts out of R (Reverse), the navigation screen will go back to the last screen that had been displayed, after a delay.

Turning the Rear Vision Camera System On or Off

To turn the RVC system on or off:

1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the MENU button to enter the configure menu options, then press the MENU hard key to select Display or touch the Display screen button.
3. Select the Rear Camera Options screen button. The Rear Camera Options screen will display.



4. Select the Video screen button. When the Video screen button is highlighted the RVC system is on.

The delay after shifting out of R (Reverse) is approximately 10 seconds. The delay can be cancelled by performing one of the following:

- Pressing a hard key on the navigation system.
- Shifting into P (Park).
- Reaching a vehicle speed of 8 km/h (5 mph).

There is a message on the rear vision camera screen that states “Check Surroundings for Safety.”

Adjusting the Brightness and Contrast of the Screen

To adjust the brightness and contrast of the screen, press the MENU button while the rear vision camera image is on the display. Any adjustments made will only affect the rear vision camera screen.

☼ **(Brightness):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the brightness of the screen.

◑ **(Contrast):** Touch the + (plus) or – (minus) screen buttons to increase or decrease the contrast of the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbols

The navigation system may have a feature that lets the driver view symbols on the navigation screen while using the RVC. The Ultrasonic Rear Park Assist (URPA) system must not be disabled to use the caution symbols. If URPA has been disabled and the symbols have been turned on, the Rear Parking Assist Symbols Unavailable error message may display. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-76*.

The symbols appear when an object has been detected by the URPA system. The symbol may cover the object when viewing the navigation screen.

To turn the symbols on or off:

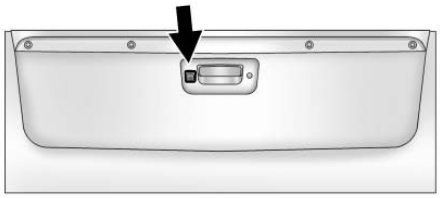
1. Make sure that URPA has not been disabled.
2. Shift into P (Park).
3. Press the MENU hard key to enter the configure menu options, then press the MENU hard key repeatedly until Display is selected or touch the Display screen button.
4. Select the Rear Camera Options screen button. The Rear Camera Options screen will display.
5. Touch the Symbols screen button. The screen button will be highlighted when on.

Rear Vision Camera Error Messages

Service Rear Vision Camera System: This message can display when the system is not receiving information it requires from other vehicle systems.

If any other problem occurs or if a problem persists, see your dealer.

Rear Vision Camera Location

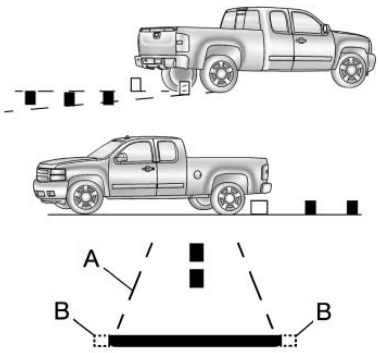


The rear vision camera is located in the bezel for the tailgate handle.

The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance. The area displayed by the camera is limited. The camera does not display objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper. The area displayed on the screen can vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following illustration shows the field of view that the camera provides.



A. View displayed by the camera

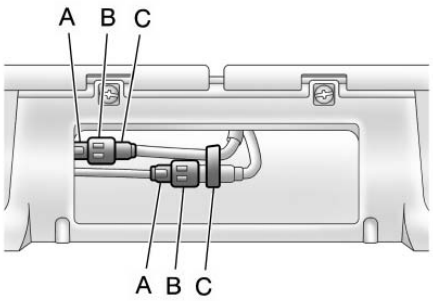
B. Corner of the rear bumper

Disconnecting the Rear Vision Camera

The rear vision camera must be disconnected if the tailgate needs to be removed.

To disconnect the camera:

1. Remove the license plate.
2. Disconnect the camera connectors from the chassis harness, located behind the license plate, by pressing on the release tab on each connector.

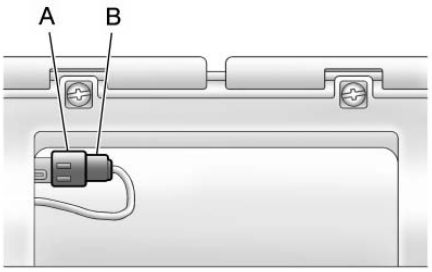


A. Chassis harness connector

B. Release tab

C. Camera connector

3. Plug the two exposed chassis harness connectors together to prevent contamination.



A. Chassis harness connector

B. Release tab

4. Feed the wiring harness through the pickup box, then plug the camera connectors together to prevent contamination.
5. Remove the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 2-11* for more information.
6. Reinstall the license plate.

Reverse this procedure to reinstall the rear vision camera and make sure the grommet and connection are secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The RVC system might not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off. See “Turning the Rear Camera System On or Off” earlier in this section.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The back of the vehicle is in an accident. If this happens, the position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.

The RVC system display in the rearview mirror may turn off or not appear as expected due to one of the following conditions. If this occurs the left indicator light on the mirror will flash.

- A slow flash may indicate a loss of video signal, or no video signal present during the reverse cycle.
- A fast flash may indicate that the display has been on for the maximum allowable time during a reverse cycle, or the display has reached an Over Temperature limit.

  The fast flash conditions are used to protect the video device from high temperature conditions. Once conditions return to normal the device will reset and the green indicator will stop flashing.

During any of these fault conditions, the display will be blank and the indicator will continue to flash as long as the vehicle is in R (Reverse) or until the conditions return to normal.

Pressing and holding ⏻ when the left indicator light is flashing will turn off the video display along with the left indicator light.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel

For diesel engine vehicles, see "Fuel for Diesel Engines" in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

For Vehicles with gasoline engines, please read this.

Gasoline

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

TOP TIER™
Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIEURE™
Essences Détergentes

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 12-1*.

Vehicles that have a FlexFuel badge and a yellow fuel cap can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 9-86*. For all other vehicles, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Recommended Fuel on page 9-84*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended Fuel

For all vehicles except those with the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, an audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock, might be heard when driving. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, the engine needs service.

If the vehicle has the 6.2L V8 engine (VIN Code 2), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. You can also use regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but the vehicle's acceleration could be slightly reduced, and a slight audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock, might be heard. If the octane is less than 87, you might notice a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you could damage the engine. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, the engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Fuel Additives on page 9-85* for additional information.

California Fuel Requirements

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Fuel Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, nothing should have to be added to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if the vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by the auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors. It is available at your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.

Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol)

Vehicles that have a FlexFuel badge and a yellow fuel cap can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). For all other vehicles, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Recommended Fuel on page 9-84*.

We encourage the use of E85 in vehicles that are designed to use it. The ethanol in E85 is a “renewable” fuel, meaning it is made from renewable sources such as corn and other crops.

Many service stations will not have an 85% ethanol fuel (E85) pump available. The U.S. Department of Energy has an alternative fuels website (www.eere.energy.gov/afdc/infrastructure/locator.html) that can help you find E85 fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Those stations that do have E85 should have a label indicating ethanol content. Do not use the fuel if the ethanol content is greater than 85%.

At a minimum, E85 should meet ASTM Specification D 5798. By definition, this means that fuel labeled E85 will have an ethanol content between 70% and 85%. Filling the fuel tank with fuel mixtures that do not meet ASTM specifications can affect driveability and could cause the malfunction indicator lamp to come on.

To ensure quick starts in the wintertime, the E85 fuel must be formulated properly for your climate according to ASTM specification D 5798. If you have trouble starting on E85, it could be because the E85 fuel is not properly formulated for your climate. If this happens, switching to gasoline or adding gasoline to the fuel tank can improve starting. For good starting and heater efficiency below 0°C (32°F), the fuel mix in the fuel tank should contain no more than 70% ethanol. It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible — do not add less than 11 L (three gallons) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 11 km (seven miles) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

E85 has less energy per gallon than gasoline, so you will need to refill the fuel tank more often when using E85 than when you are using gasoline. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-88*.

Notice: **Some additives are not compatible with E85 fuel and can harm the vehicle's fuel system. Do not add anything to E85. Damage caused by additives would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

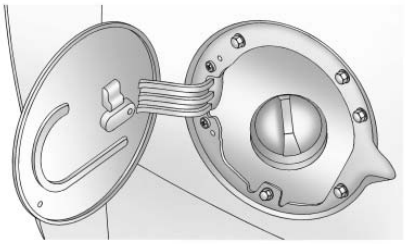
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Filling the Tank

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

⚠ WARNING

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island. Turn off the engine when refueling. Do not smoke near fuel or when refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle. If the vehicle has E85 fuel capability, the fuel cap will be yellow and state that E85 or gasoline can be used. See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 9-86*.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

⚠ WARNING

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

If the vehicle is a dual fuel tank chassis cab model, and it runs out of fuel, refuel the front fuel tank first to ensure a quick restart.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See “Washing the Vehicle” in Exterior Cleaning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you tighten it. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*.

The TIGHTEN GAS CAP message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC) if the fuel cap is not properly installed. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-48* for more information.

⚠ WARNING

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type fuel cap might not fit properly, might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-27*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ WARNING

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer.

See the following trailer towing information in this section:

- For information on driving while towing a trailer, see “Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips.”
- For maximum vehicle and trailer weights, see “Trailer Towing.”
- For information on equipment to tow a trailer, see “Towing Equipment.”

For information on towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-101*. For information on towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motorhome, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-101*.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

Pulling a Trailer

Important points for pulling a trailer:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure the rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. See “Hitches” under *Towing Equipment on page 9-111*.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 800 km (500 miles) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle, or other parts could be damaged.
- During the first 800 km (500 miles) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

Important considerations that have to do with weight:

- Weight of the trailer
- Weight of the trailer tongue
- Weight on the vehicle's tires
- Weight of the trailering combination

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with a Trailer

⚠ WARNING

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

To maximize safety when towing a trailer:

- Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks and make necessary repairs before starting a trip.
- Never drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about Carbon Monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-42*.

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. The combination you are driving is longer and not as responsive as the vehicle itself. Get acquainted with the handling and braking of the rig before setting out for the open road.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirrors. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes work.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure and the lamps and any trailer brakes still work.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid heavy braking and sudden turns.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. The combination will not accelerate as quickly and is longer so it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

If the trailer turn signal bulbs burn out, the arrows on the instrument panel will still flash for turns. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

The Tow/Haul Mode may be used if the transmission shifts too often. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49*.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the automatic transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-24*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ WARNING

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. If the vehicle is four-wheel-drive, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear and not in N (Neutral).
6. Release the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

If the engine has been left running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow.

Always put the shift lever fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set.

If the transfer case on a four-wheel-drive vehicle is in N (Neutral), the vehicle will be free to roll, even if the shift lever is in P (Park). Be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Shift into a gear.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Let up on the brake pedal.
6. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
7. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See this manual's Maintenance Schedule or Index for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Towing

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *New Vehicle Break-In on page 9-32* for more information.

⚠ WARNING

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.**

To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, read the information in "Weight of the Trailer" later in this section.

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how the rig is used. Speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See "Weight of the Trailer Tongue" later in this section for more information.

Trailer weight rating (TWR) is calculated assuming the tow vehicle has only the driver but all required trailering equipment. Weight of additional optional equipment, passengers, and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the trailer weight rating.

Use the following chart to determine how much the vehicle can weigh, based upon the vehicle model and options.

Weights listed apply for conventional trailers and fifth-wheel trailers unless otherwise noted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-96 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
1500 Series 2WD Regular Cab Standard Box (b)			
4.3L V6 (c)	3.23	2 177 kg (4,800 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
4.3L V6 — With Automatic Transmission (c)	3.73	2 449 kg (5,400 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.3L V6 — With Manual Transmission (c)	3.73	1 860 kg (4,100 lbs)	3 938 kg (8,683 lbs)
4.8L V8 (c)	3.23	2 132 kg (4,700 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
4.8L V8	3.73	3 266 kg (7,200 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
5.3L LMG V8	3.08	2 994 kg (6,600 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L LMG V8, K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 357 kg (7,400 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L LMG V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 128 kg (9,100 lbs)	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)
5.3L LMG V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 128 kg (9,100 lbs)	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)
5.3L LMG V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 128 kg (9,100 lbs)	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
1500 Series 2WD Extended Cab Standard Box (b)			
4.3L V6 (c)	3.23	1 996 kg (4,400 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
4.8L V8 (c)	3.23	2 132 kg (4,700 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8	3.73	3 039 kg (6,700 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
5.3L V8	3.08	2 812 kg (6,200 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 130 kg (6,900 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 173 kg (9,200 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 218 kg (9,300 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.73	4 853 kg (10,700 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.73	4 627 kg (10,200 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-98 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
1500 Series 2WD Crew Cab Short Box (c)			
4.8L V8	3.23	2 132 kg (4,700 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8	3.73	3 039 kg (6,700 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 (LMG)	3.08	2 767 kg (6,100 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 (LMG) K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 084 kg (6,800 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg (XFE)	3.08	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 355 kg (9,600 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8	3.42	3 039 kg (6,700 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg	3.73	4 808 kg (10,600 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
1500 Series 2WD Regular Cab Long Box (b)			
4.3L V6 (c)	3.23	2 132 kg (4,700 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
4.3L V6 (c)	3.73	2 359 kg (5,200 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8 (c)	3.23	2 313 kg (5,100 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8	3.73	3 221 kg (7,100 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 266 kg (7,200 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
5.3L V8	3.42	2 948 kg (6,500 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	3 992 kg (8,800 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
1500 Series 2WD Extended Cab Long Box (b)			
5.3L V8	3.08	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 039 kg (6,700 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 037 kg (8,900 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
1500 Series 4WD Regular Cab Standard Box (b)			
4.3L V6 (c)	3.73	2 313 kg (5,100 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8 (c)	3.42	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	4 990 kg (11,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 (c)	3.08	2 903 kg (6,400 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 221 kg (7,100 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-100 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 037 kg (8,900 lbs)	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	3 674 kg (8,100 lbs)	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)
1500 Series 4WD Extended Cab Standard Box (b)			
4.8L V8 (c)	3.42	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 990 kg (11,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 (c)	3.08	2 767 kg (6,100 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg (c)	3.08	3 084 kg (6,800 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 354 kg (9,600 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 264 kg (9,400 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 037 kg (8,900 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.73	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.73	4 491 kg (9,900 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
1500 Series 4WD Crew Cab Short Box (c)			
4.8L V8	3.42	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 990 kg (11,000 lbs)
5.3L V8	3.08	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 039 kg (6,700 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8	3.42	2 903 kg (6,400 lbs)	5 443 kg (12,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.42	4 264 kg (9,400 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
6.2L V8 NHT Max Trailering Pkg	3.73	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
1500 Series 4WD Regular Cab Long Box (b)			
4.3L V6 (c)	3.73	2 223 kg (4,900 lbs)	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)
4.8L V8 (c)	3.42	2 631 kg (5,800 lbs)	4 990 kg (11,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 (c)	3.08	2 858 kg (6,300 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg	3.08	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 445 kg (9,800 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-102 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
1500 Series 4WD Extended Cab Long Box (b)			
5.3L V8 (c)	3.08	2 631 kg (5,800 lbs)	5 216 kg (11,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg (c)	3.08	2 948 kg (6,500 lbs)	5 534 kg (12,200 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Conventional Trailer	3.42	4 218 kg (9,300 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
5.3L V8 K5L HD Cooling Pkg — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	3.42	3 629 kg (8,000 lbs)	6 804 kg (15,000 lbs)
2500 Series 2WD Extended Cab Standard Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 445 kg (9,800 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 486 kg (14,300 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 2WD Crew Cab Standard Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 441 kg (14,200 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
2500 Series 2WD Regular Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 627 kg (10,200 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Payload Performance Pkg (UB7)	3.73	4 536 kg (10,000 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 668 kg (14,700 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 2WD Extended Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 441 kg (14,200 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 2WD Crew Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 354 kg (9,600 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 396 kg (14,100 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-104 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
2500 Series 4WD Extended Cab Standard Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 4WD Crew Cab Standard Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 264 kg (9,400 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 305 kg (13,900 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 4WD Regular Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 491 kg (9,900 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 532 kg (14,400 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
2500 Series 4WD Extended Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 264 kg (9,400 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 305 kg (13,900 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
2500 Series 4WD Crew Cab Long Box HD (d)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 218 kg (9,300 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 260 kg (13,800 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 2WD Regular Cab (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 577 kg (14,500 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 354 kg (9,600 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	6 396 kg (14,100 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 2WD Extended Cab (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-106 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 128kg (9,100 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	6 169 kg (13,600 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 2WD Crew Cab Standard Box (e)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 309kg (9,500 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 350 kg (14,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 2WD Crew Cab Long Box (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 264 kg (9,400 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 305 kg (13,900 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 082 kg (9,000 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	6 123 kg (13,500 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 4WD Regular Cab (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 400 kg (9,700 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 441 kg (14,200 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 218 kg (9,300 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	6 260 kg (13,800 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 4WD Extended Cab (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 173 kg (9,200 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 214 kg (13,700 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 037 kg (8,900 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	6 078 kg (13,400 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
3500 Series 4WD Crew Cab Standard Box (e)			
6.0L V8	3.73	4 173 kg (9,200 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 — Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 214 kg (13,700 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9-108 Driving and Operating

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR (a)
3500 Series 4WD Crew Cab Long Box (e)			
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels)	3.73	4 128 kg (9,100 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Conventional Trailer	4.10	5 897 kg (13,000 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Single Rear Wheels) Fifth-Wheel Trailer	4.10	6 169 kg (13,600 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	3.73	3 946 kg (8,700 lbs)	7 257 kg (16,000 lbs)
6.0L V8 (Dual Rear Wheels)	4.10	5 987 kg (13,200 lbs)	9 299 kg (20,500 lbs)

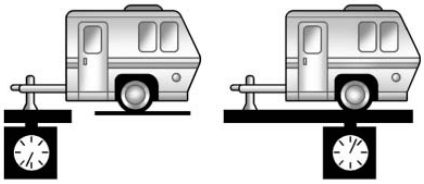
(a) The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment, and conversions. The GCWR for the vehicle should not be exceeded.
(b) Fifth-wheel or gooseneck kingpin weight should be15 percent to 25 percent of trailer weight up to 680 kg (1,500 lbs) maximum.
(c) This model is neither designed nor intended to tow fifth-wheel or gooseneck trailers.
(d) Fifth-wheel or gooseneck kingpin weight should be 15 percent to 25 percent of trailer weight up to 1 361 kg (3,000 lbs) maximum.
(e) Fifth-wheel or gooseneck kingpin weight should be 15 percent to 25 percent of trailer weight up to 1 587 kg (3,500 lbs) maximum.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ask your dealer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices on page 13-4* for more information.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is very important because it is also part of the vehicle weight. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle as well as trailer tongue weight. Vehicle options, equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle reduce the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. See " Vehicle Load Limits" for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



A B

Trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 to 15 percent and fifth-wheel or gooseneck kingpin weight should be 15 to 25 percent of the loaded trailer weight (B) up to the maximums for vehicle series and hitch type shown here:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Series	Hitch Type	Maximum Tongue Weight
1500	Weight Carrying	272 kg (600 lbs)
2500HD/3500	Weight Carrying	453 kg (1,000 lbs)
1500	Weight Distributing	499 kg (1,100 lbs)
2500HD/3500	Weight Distributing	680 kg (1,500 lbs)
1500	Fifth-Wheel Gooseneck	680 kg (1,500 lbs)
2500HD	Fifth-Wheel Gooseneck	1 134 kg (2,500 lbs)
3500 Single Rear Wheels	Fifth-Wheel Gooseneck	1 360 kg (3,000 lbs)
3500 Dual Rear Wheels	Fifth-Wheel Gooseneck	1 587 kg (3,500 lbs)

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for the vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue or kingpin weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). See “Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires” later in this section for more information.

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the inflation pressures found on the Certification Tire label on the drivers door or see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* for more information. Make sure not to exceed the GVWR limit for the vehicle, or the RGAWR, with the tow vehicle and trailer fully loaded for the trip including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight-distributing hitch, make sure not to exceed the RGAWR before applying the weight distribution spring bars.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight of the Trailering Combination

It is important that the combination of the tow vehicle and trailer does not exceed any of its weight ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Trailer Weight Rating, or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure it is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the tow vehicle and trailer combination, fully loaded for the trip, getting individual weights for each of these items.

Towing Equipment

Hitches

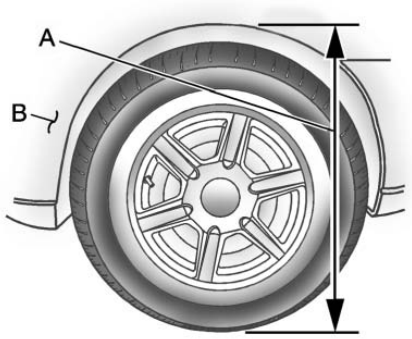
The correct hitch equipment helps maintain combination control. Most small-to-medium trailers can be towed with a weight-carrying hitch which simply features a coupler latched to the hitch ball.

Larger trailers may require a weight-distributing hitch that uses spring bars to distribute the trailer tongue weight among the two vehicle and trailer axles. Fifth-wheel and gooseneck hitches may also be used. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-94* for rating limits with various hitch types.

If a step-bumper hitch will be used, the bumper could be damaged in sharp turns. Make sure there is ample room when turning to avoid contact between the trailer and the bumper.

Consider using sway controls with any trailer. Ask a trailering professional about sway controls or refer to the trailer manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

Weight-Distributing Hitch Adjustment



A. Body to Ground Distance

B. Front of Vehicle

When using a weight-distributing hitch, the spring bars should be adjusted so the distance (A) is the same after coupling the trailer to the tow vehicle and adjusting the hitch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fifth-Wheel and Gooseneck Trailering

Fifth-wheel and gooseneck trailers can be used with many pickup models. These trailers place a larger percentage of the weight (kingpin weight) on the tow vehicle than conventional trailers. Make sure this weight does not cause the vehicle to exceed GAWR or GVWR.

Fifth-wheel or gooseneck kingpin weight should be 15 to 25 percent of the trailer weight up to the maximum amount specified in the trailering chart for the vehicle. See “Weight of the Trailer” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-94* for more information.

The hitch should be located in the pickup bed so that its centerline is over or slightly in front of the rear axle. Take care that it is not so far forward that it will contact the back of the cab in sharp turns. This is especially important for short box pickups. Trailer pin box extensions and sliding fifth-wheel hitch assemblies can help this condition. There should be at least six inches of clearance between the top of the pickup box and the bottom of the trailer shelf that extends over the box.

Make sure the hitch is attached to the tow vehicle frame rails. Do not use the pickup box for support.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. If the trailer being towed weighs up to 2 271 kg (5,000 lbs) with a factory-installed step bumper, safety chains may be attached to the attaching points on the bumper; otherwise, safety chains should be attached to holes on the trailer hitch platform. Always leave just enough slack so the combination can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Brakes

A loaded trailer that weighs more than 900 kg (2,000 lbs) needs to have its own brake system that is adequate for the weight of the trailer. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly.

If the vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak, the trailer cannot tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

The trailer brake system can tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system only if:

- The trailer parts can withstand 20 650 kPa (3,000 psi) of pressure.
- The trailer's brake system will use less than 0.3 cc (0.02 cubic inch) of fluid from the vehicle's master cylinder. Otherwise, both braking systems will not work well or at all.

If everything checks out this far, make the brake tap at the port on the master cylinder that sends the fluid to the rear brakes. Use only steel brake tubing to make the tap.

Auxiliary Battery

The auxiliary battery provision can be used to supply electrical power to additional equipment that may be added, such as a slide-in camper. If the vehicle has this provision, this relay will be located on the driver side of the vehicle, next to the underhood electrical center.

Be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with any electrical equipment that is installed.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods will drain the battery. Always turn off electrical equipment when not in use and do not use equipment that exceeds the maximum amperage rating for the auxiliary battery provision.**

Trailer Wiring Harness

The vehicle is equipped with one of the following wiring harnesses for towing a trailer or hauling a slide-in camper.

Basic Trailer Wiring

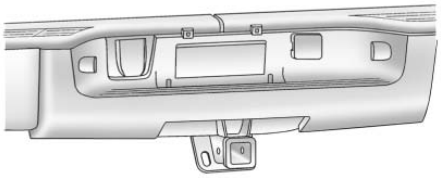
All regular, extended cab and crew cab pickups have a seven-wire trailer towing harness.

For vehicles not equipped with heavy duty trailering, the harness is secured to the vehicle's frame behind the spare tire mount. The harness requires the installation of a trailer connector, which is available through your dealer.

If towing a light-duty trailer with a standard four-way round pin connector, an adapter is available from your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heavy-DutyTrailer Wiring Harness Package



For vehicles equipped with heavy duty trailering, the harness is connected to a bracket on the hitch platform. The seven-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps
- Red: Battery Feed*
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake*

*The fuses for these two circuits are installed in the underhood electrical center, but the wires are not connected. They should be connected by your dealer or a qualified service center. The fuse and wire for the ITBC is factory installed and connected if the vehicle is equipped with an ITBC. The fuse for the battery feed is not required if the vehicle has an auxiliary battery. If the vehicle does not have an auxiliary battery, have your dealer or authorized service center install the required fuse.

If charging a remote (non-vehicle) battery, press the Tow/Haul Mode button, if equipped, located at the end of the shift lever. This will boost the vehicle system voltage and properly charge the battery.

If the trailer is too light for Tow/Haul Mode, or the vehicle is not equipped with Tow/Haul, turn on the headlamps as a second way to boost the vehicle system and charge the battery.

Camper/Fifth-Wheel Trailer Wiring Package

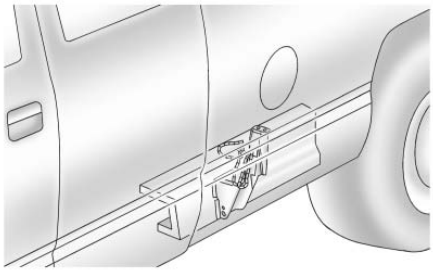
The seven-wire camper harness is located under the front edge of the pickup box on the driver side of the vehicle, attached to the frame bracket. A connector must be added to the wiring harness which connects to the camper.

The harness contains the following camper/trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Red: Battery Feed
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake



If the vehicle is equipped with the "Heavy-Duty Trailering" option, please refer to "Heavy-Duty Trailer Wiring Package" earlier in this section.

When the camper-wiring harness is ordered without the heavy-duty trailering package, an eight-wire harness with a seven-pin connector is located at the rear of the vehicle and is tied to the vehicle's frame.

Electric Brake Control Wiring Provisions

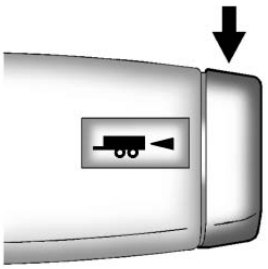
These wiring provisions are included with the vehicle as part of the trailer wiring package. These provisions are for an electric brake controller. The instrument panel contains blunt cut wires behind the steering column for the trailer brake controller. The harness contains the following wires:

- Dark Blue: Brake Signal to Trailer Connector
- Red/Black: Battery
- Light Blue/White: Brake Switch
- White: Ground

The harness should be installed by your dealer or a qualified service center.

If the vehicle is equipped with an Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) System, the blunt cuts exist, but are not connected further in the harness. If an aftermarket trailer brake controller is installed, the ITBC must be disconnected. Do not power both ITBC and aftermarket controllers to control the trailer brakes at the same time.

Tow/Haul Mode



Pressing this button at the end of the shift lever turns on and off the Tow/Haul Mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This indicator light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when the Tow/Haul Mode is on.

Tow/Haul is a feature that assists when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load. See *Tow/Haul Mode on page 9-49* for more information.

Tow/Haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75 percent of the vehicle's Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR). See “Weight of the Trailer” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-94*. Tow/Haul is most useful under the following driving conditions:

- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load through rolling terrain.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in stop-and-go traffic.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in busy parking lots where improved low speed control of the vehicle is desired.

Operating the vehicle in Tow/Haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of Tow/Haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/Haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Integrated Trailer Brake Control System

The vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system for electric trailer brakes.

This symbol is located on the Trailer Brake Control Panel on vehicles with an Integrated Trailer Brake Control system. The power output to the trailer brakes is based on the amount of brake pressure being applied by the vehicle’s brake system. This available power output to the trailer brakes can be adjusted to a wide range of trailering situations.

The ITBC system is integrated with the vehicle’s brake, antilock brake, and StabiliTrak (if equipped) systems. In trailering conditions that cause the vehicle’s antilock brake or

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

StabiliTrak systems to activate, power sent to the trailer's brakes will be automatically adjusted to minimize trailer wheel lock-up. This does not imply that the trailer has StabiliTrak.

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC) on page 9-123*.

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature. See *Hill Start Assist (HSA) on page 9-70*.

If the vehicle's brake, antilock brake, or StabiliTrak systems are not functioning properly, the ITBC system may not be fully functional or may not function at all. Make sure all of these systems are fully operational to ensure full functionality of the ITBC system.

The ITBC system is powered through the vehicle's electrical system. Turning the ignition off will also turn off the ITBC system.

The ITBC system is fully functional only when the ignition is in ON or in RUN.

The ITBC system can only be used with trailers with electric brakes.

⚠ WARNING

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBC system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be an increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle, trailer, or other property. An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with surge, air, or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on the trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.

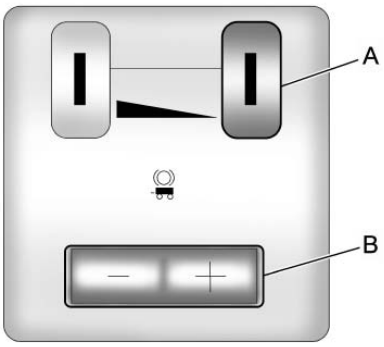
When trailering, make sure of the following:

- The ITBC system is used only with trailers that are equipped with electric brakes.
- All applicable local and federal laws and regulations are followed.
- All electrical and mechanical connections to the trailer are made correctly.
- The trailer's brakes are in proper working condition.
- The trailer and vehicle are properly loaded for the towing condition.

The ITBC system is a factory-installed item. Out-of-factory installation of this system should not be attempted. GM is not responsible for warranty or performance of the system resulting from out-of-factory installation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Brake Control Panel



A. Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever

B. Trailer Gain Adjustment Buttons

The ITBC system has a control panel located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column. See *Instrument Panel (Base/Uplevel Version) on page 1-2* or *Instrument Panel (Premium Version) on page 1-6*. The control panel allows adjustment to the amount of output, referred to as trailer gain, available to the electric trailer brakes and allows manual application of the trailer brakes. The Trailer Brake Control Panel is used along with the Trailer Brake Display Page on the DIC to adjust and display power output to the trailer brakes.

Trailer Brake DIC Display Page

The ITBC system displays messages on the vehicle's Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Brake System Messages on page 5-44* for more information.

The display page indicates Trailer Gain setting, power output to the electric trailer brakes, trailer connection, and system operational status.

The Trailer Brake Display Page can be displayed by performing any of the following actions:

- Scrolling through the DIC menu pages using the odometer trip stem or the DIC Vehicle Information button (if equipped).
- Pressing a Trailer Gain button—If the Trailer Brake Display Page is not currently displayed, pressing a Trailer Gain button will first recall the current Trailer Gain setting. After the Trailer Brake Display Page is displayed, each press and release of the gain buttons will then cause the Trailer Gain setting to change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Activating the Manual Trailer Brake Apply lever.
- Connecting a trailer equipped with electric trailer brakes.

All DIC warning and service messages must first be acknowledged by the driver by pressing the odometer trip stem or the DIC Vehicle Information button (if equipped) before the Trailer Brake Display Page can be displayed and Trailer Gain can be adjusted.

TRAILER GAIN: This setting is displayed any time the Trailer Brake Display Page is active. This setting can be adjusted from 0.0 to 10.0 with either a trailer connected or disconnected. To adjust the Trailer Gain, press one of the Trailer Gain adjustment buttons located on the Trailer Brake Control Panel. Press and hold a gain button to cause the Trailer Gain to continuously adjust. To turn the output to the trailer off, adjust the Trailer Gain setting to 0.0 (zero). 0.0 (zero) gain is the factory default setting. To properly adjust trailer gain, see "Trailer Gain Adjustment Procedure" later in this section.

TRAILER OUTPUT: This is displayed any time a trailer with electric brakes is connected. Output to the electric brakes is based on the amount of vehicle braking present and relative to the Trailer Gain setting. Output is displayed from 0 to 10 bars for each gain setting.

On vehicles with Trailer Sway Control (TSC) or Hill Start Assist (HSA), output to the electric trailer brakes may be displayed when the systems are active. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC) on page 9-123* and *Hill Start Assist (HSA) on page 9-70*.

The Trailer Output will indicate "- - - - -" on the Trailer Brake Display Page whenever the following occur:

- No trailer is connected
- A trailer without electric brakes is connected (no DIC message is displayed)
- A trailer with electric brakes has become disconnected (a CHECK TRAILER WIRING message will also be displayed on the DIC)
- There is a fault present in the wiring to the electric trailer brakes (a CHECK TRAILER WIRING message will also be displayed on the DIC)
- There is a fault in the ITBC system (a SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM message will also be displayed in the DIC)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Trailer Brake Apply

The Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever is located on the Trailer Brake Control Panel and is used to apply the trailer's electric brakes independent of the vehicle's brakes. This lever is used in the Trailer Gain Adjustment Procedure to properly adjust the power output to the trailer brakes. Sliding the lever to the left will apply only the trailer brakes. The power output to the trailer is indicated in the Trailer Brake Display Page on the DIC. If the vehicle's service brakes are applied while using the Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever, the trailer output power will be the greater of the two.

The trailer's and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle braking or manual trailer brakes are applied.

Trailer Gain Adjustment Procedure

Trailer Gain should be set for a specific trailering condition and must be adjusted any time vehicle loading, trailer loading, or road surface conditions change.

Setting the Trailer Gain properly is needed for the best trailer stopping performance. A trailer that is over-gained may result in locked trailer brakes. A trailer that is under-gained may result in not enough trailer braking. Both of these conditions may result in poorer stopping and stability of the vehicle and trailer.

Use the following procedure to correctly adjust Trailer Gain for each towing condition:

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in proper working condition.
2. Connect a properly loaded trailer to the vehicle and make all necessary mechanical and electrical connections. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* for more information.
3. After the electrical connection is made to a trailer equipped with electric brakes:
   - A TRAILER CONNECTED message will be briefly displayed on the DIC.
   - The Trailer Brake Display Page will appear on the DIC showing TRAILER GAIN and TRAILER OUTPUT.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- In the Trailer Output display on the DIC, "- - - - - -" will disappear if there is no error present. Connecting a trailer without electric brakes will not clear the six dashed lines.

4. Adjust the Trailer Gain by using the gain adjustment (+ / -) buttons on the Trailer Brake Control Panel.
5. Drive the vehicle with the trailer attached on a level road surface representative of the towing condition and free of traffic at about 32 to 40 km/h (20 to 25 mph) and fully apply the Manual Trailer Brake Apply Lever.

   Adjusting trailer gain at speeds lower than 32 to 40 km/h (20 to 25 mph) may result in an incorrect gain setting.
6. Adjust the Trailer Gain to just below the point of trailer wheel lock-up, indicated by trailer wheel squeal or tire smoke when a trailer wheel locks.

   Trailer wheel lock-up may not occur if towing a heavily loaded trailer. In this case, adjust the Trailer Gain to the highest allowable setting for the towing condition.
7. Re-adjust Trailer Gain any time vehicle loading, trailer loading or road surface conditions change or if trailer wheel lock-up is noticed at any time while towing.

Other ITBC-Related DIC Messages

In addition to displaying TRAILER GAIN and TRAILER OUTPUT through the DIC, trailer connection and ITBC system status are displayed on the DIC.

TRAILER CONNECTED: This message will be briefly displayed when a trailer with electric brakes is first connected to the vehicle. This message will automatically turn off in about 10 seconds. The driver can also acknowledge this message before it automatically turns off.

CHECK TRAILER WIRING: This message will be displayed if:

1. The ITBC system first determines connection to a trailer with electric brakes and then the trailer harness becomes disconnected from the vehicle.

   If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is stationary, this message will automatically turn off in about 30 seconds. This message will also turn off if the driver acknowledges this message or if the trailer harness is re-connected.

   If the disconnect occurs while the vehicle is moving, this message will continue until the ignition is turned off. This message will also turn off if the driver acknowledges this message or if the trailer harness is re-connected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. There is an electrical fault in the wiring to the electric trailer brakes. This message will continue as long as there is an electrical fault in the trailer wiring. This message will also turn off if the driver acknowledges this message.

To determine if the electrical fault is on the vehicle side or trailer side of the trailer wiring harness connection, do the following:

1. Disconnect the trailer wiring harness from the vehicle.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Wait 10 seconds, then turn the ignition back to RUN.
4. If the CHECK TRAILER WIRING message re-appears, the electrical fault is on the vehicle side.

   If the CHECK TRAILER WIRING message only re-appears when connecting the trailer wiring harness to the vehicle, the electrical fault is on the trailer side.

SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM: This message will be displayed when there is a problem with the ITBC system. If this message persists over multiple ignition cycles, there is a problem with the ITBC system. Take the vehicle to an authorized GM dealer to have the ITBC system diagnosed and repaired.

If either the CHECK TRAILER WIRING or SERVICE TRAILER BRAKE SYSTEM message is displayed while driving the vehicle, power is no longer available to the trailer brakes. When traffic conditions allow, carefully pull the vehicle over to the side of the road and turn the ignition off. Check the wiring connection to the trailer and turn the ignition back on. If either of these messages continues, either the vehicle or trailer needs service.

An authorized GM dealer may be able to diagnose and repair problems with the trailer. However, any diagnosis and repair of the trailer is not covered under the vehicle warranty. Please contact your trailer dealer for assistance with trailer repairs and trailer warranty information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

2500 and 3500 series vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature. If the vehicle is towing a trailer and the system detects that the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are applied without the driver pressing the brake pedal. If the vehicle is equipped with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, StabiliTrak may also apply the trailer brakes. The TCS/StabiliTrak warning light will flash on the instrument panel cluster to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, StabiliTrak will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3* for more information.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-48* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-48*.

Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment

Before installing a snow plow on the vehicle, here are some things you need to know:

Notice: **If your vehicle does not have the snow plow prep package, adding a plow can damage your vehicle, and the repairs would not be covered by warranty. Unless your vehicle was built to carry a snow plow, do not add one to your vehicle. If your vehicle has the snow plow prep package, called RPO VYU, then the payload your vehicle can carry will be reduced when a snow plow is installed. Your vehicle can be damaged if either the front or rear axle ratings or the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) are exceeded.**

Some vehicles are built with a special snow plow prep package, called RPO VYU. If your vehicle has this option, you can add a plow to it, provided certain weights, such as

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the weights on the vehicle's axles and the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), are not exceeded.

The plow the vehicle can carry depends on many things, such as:

- The options the vehicle came with, and the weight of those options.
- The weight and number of passengers you intend to carry.
- The weight of items added to the vehicle, like a tool box or truck cap.
- The total weight of any additional cargo you intend to carry.

Say, for example, you have a 318 kg (700 lb) snow plow. The total weight of all occupants and cargo inside the cab should not exceed 135 kg (300 lb). This means that you may only be able to carry one passenger. But, even this may be too much if you have got other equipment already adding to the weight of the vehicle.

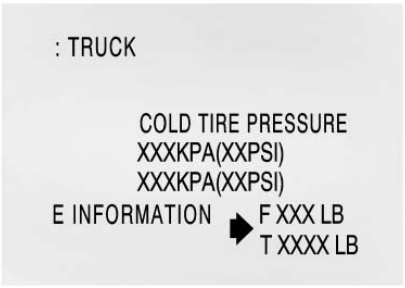
Here are some guidelines for safely carrying a snow plow on the vehicle:

- Make sure the weight on the front and rear axles does not exceed the axle rating for each.
- For the front axle, if more cargo or passengers must be carried, appropriate counter ballast must be installed rear of the rear axle. Counter ballast must be properly secured so it will not move during driving.
- Follow the snow plow manufacturer's recommendations regarding rear ballast. Rear ballast may be required to ensure a proper front and rear weight distribution ratio, even though the actual weight at the front axle may be less than the front axle rating.
- The snow plow manufacturer or installer can assist you in determining the amount of rear ballast required, to help make sure the snowplow/vehicle combination does not exceed the GVW rating, the front and rear axle ratings, and the front and rear weight distribution ratio.
- The total vehicle must not exceed the GVW rating.

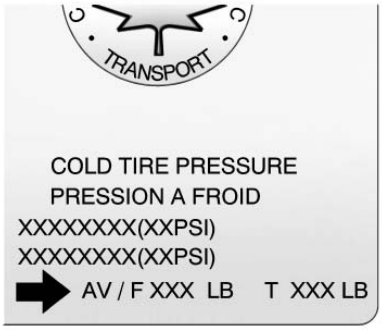
Front axle reserve capacity is the difference between the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the front axle weight of the vehicle with full fuel and passengers. Basically, it is the amount of weight that can be added to the front axle before reaching the front GAWR.

The front axle reserve capacity for the vehicle can be found in the lower right corner of the Certification/Tire label, as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

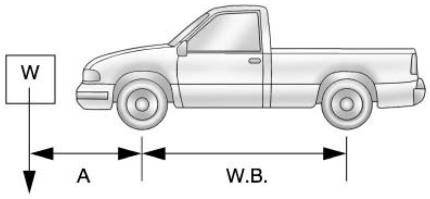


United States



Canada

In order to calculate the amount of weight any front accessory, such as a snow plow, is adding to the front axle, use the following formula:



(W x (A + W.B.)) /W.B.= Weight the accessory is adding to the front axle.

Where:

W = Weight of added accessory
A = Distance that the accessory is in front of the front axle
W.B. = Vehicle Wheelbase

For example, adding a 318 kg (700 lb) snow plow actually adds more than 318 kg (700 lbs) to the front axle. Using the formula, if the snow plow is 122 cm (4 ft) in front of the front axle and the wheel base is 305 cm (10 ft), then:

W = 318 kg (700 lb)
A = 122 cm (4 ft)
W.B. = 305 cm (10 ft)

(W x (A + W.B.))/W.B. =
(700 x (4 + 10))/10 = 445 kg (980 lbs)

So, if the front axle reserve capacity is more than 445 kg (980 lbs), you could add the snow plow without exceeding the front GAWR.

You can add heavier equipment on the front of the vehicle if you compensate for it by carrying fewer passengers, less cargo, or by positioning cargo toward the rear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This has the effect of reducing the load on the front. However, the front GAWR, rear GAWR, and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) must never be exceeded.

⚠ WARNING

On some vehicles that have certain front mounted equipment, such as a snow plow, it may be possible to load the front axle to the front gross axle weight rating (GAWR) but not have enough weight on the rear axle to have proper braking performance. If your brakes can not work properly, you could have a crash. To help your brakes work properly when a snow plow is installed, always follow the snow plow manufacturer or installer's recommendation for rear ballast to ensure a proper front and rear weight distribution ratio, even though the actual front weight

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

may be less than the front GAWR, and the total vehicle weight is less than the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR). Maintaining a proper front and rear weight distribution ratio is necessary to provide proper braking performance.

Total vehicle reserve capacity is the difference between the GVWR and the weight of the truck with full fuel and passengers. It is the amount of weight that can be added to the vehicle before reaching the GVWR. Keep in mind that reserve capacity numbers are intended as a guide when selecting the amount of equipment or cargo the truck can carry. If unsure of the vehicle's front, rear, or total weight, go to a weigh station and weigh the vehicle. Your dealer can also help with this.

The total vehicle reserve capacity for the vehicle can be found in the lower right corner of the Certification/Tire label as shown previously.

See your dealer for additional advice and information about using a snow plow on the vehicle. Also, see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Emergency Roof Lamp Provisions

Vehicles with the RPO VYU snow plow prep package also have an emergency roof lamp provision package, RPO TRW. Wiring for the emergency roof lamp is provided above the overhead console. See *Auxiliary Roof-Mounted Lamp on page 6-7* for switch location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab

We are aware that some vehicle owners might consider having the pickup box removed and a commercial or recreational body installed. Owners should be aware that, as manufactured, there are differences between a chassis cab and a pickup with the box removed which could affect vehicle safety. The components necessary to adapt a pickup to permit its safe use with a specialized body should be installed by the body builder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 10-3
California Proposition 65 Warning 10-3
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 10-3
Accessories and Modifications 10-3

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work 10-4
Hood 10-5
Engine Compartment Overview 10-6
Engine Oil 10-7
Engine Oil Life System 10-9
Automatic Transmission Fluid (4-Speed Transmission) . . . 10-11
Automatic Transmission Fluid (6-Speed Transmission) 10-14
Manual Transmission Fluid 10-17
Hydraulic Clutch 10-17
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 10-18
Cooling System 10-19
Engine Coolant 10-20
Engine Overheating 10-24
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 10-26
Engine Fan 10-26
Power Steering Fluid 10-27
Washer Fluid 10-28
Brakes 10-29
Brake Fluid 10-30
Battery 10-32
Four-Wheel Drive 10-32
Front Axle 10-34
Rear Axle 10-35
Noise Control System 10-36
Starter Switch Check 10-37
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-38
Ignition Transmission Lock Check 10-38
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-39
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-39
Glass Replacement 10-40

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp Aiming 10-40

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 10-43
Halogen Bulbs 10-43
Headlamps (Silverado) 10-43
Pick-Up Box Identification and Fender Marker Lamps 10-44
Taillamps (Chassis Cab Models) 10-44
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 10-45
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) and Cargo Lamp 10-45
License Plate Lamp 10-46
Replacement Bulbs 10-46

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload 10-47
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-48
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-48
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-52

Wheels and Tires

Tires 10-55
Tire Sidewall Labeling 10-56
Tire Designations 10-59
Tire Terminology and Definitions 10-60
Tire Pressure 10-63
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation 10-65
Tire Pressure Monitor System 10-65
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 10-67
Tire Inspection 10-71
Tire Rotation 10-71
Dual Tire Rotation 10-73
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-74
Buying New Tires 10-75
Different Size Tires and Wheels 10-77
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-78
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-79
Wheel Replacement 10-80
Tire Chains 10-81
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-81
Tire Changing 10-83
Full-Size Spare Tire 10-95

Jump Starting

Jump Starting 10-96

Towing

Towing the Vehicle 10-101
Recreational Vehicle Towing 10-101

Appearance Care

Exterior Care 10-106
Interior Care 10-111
Floor Mats 10-114

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

ACDelco

Genuine GM Parts

Goodwrench

GM Accessories

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Damage to vehicle components resulting from the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your GM dealer can accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-48*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

⚠ WARNING

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-14*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Airbag System Check on page 3-50*.

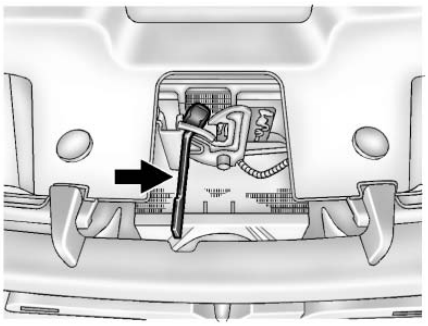
Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records on page 11-12*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hood

To open the hood:

1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle to the left of the brake pedal.

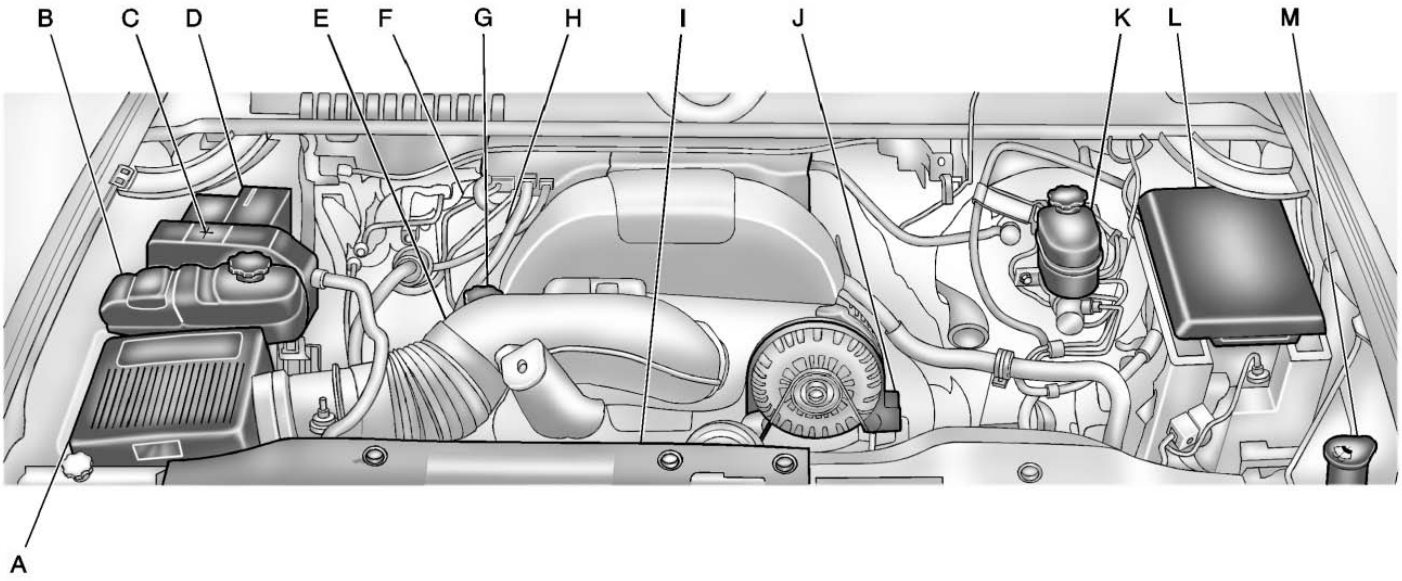


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary hood release. This is located under the hood, near the center of the grille.
3. Push the secondary hood release to the right.
4. Lift the hood.

   Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then bring the hood from full open to within 152 mm (6 in) from the closed position, pause, and push the front center of the hood with a swift, firm motion to fully close the hood.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Overview



5.3 L V8 Engine Shown (4.3 L V6 Engine, 4.8 L V6 Engine, 6.0 L V8 Engine, and 6.2 L V8 Engine Similar)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-18*.

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-19*.

C. Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 10-96*.

D. *Battery on page 10-32*.

E. Remote Negative (−) Terminal (Out of View). See *Jump Starting on page 10-96*.

F. Automatic Transmission Dipstick (Out of View). See "Checking the Fluid Level" under *Automatic Transmission Fluid (4-Speed Transmission) on page 10-11* or *Automatic Transmission Fluid (6-Speed Transmission) on page 10-14*.

G. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See "When to Add Engine Oil" under *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

H. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See "Checking Engine Oil" under *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

I. Engine Cooling Fan. See *Cooling System on page 10-19*.

J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 10-27*.

K. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-30*.

L. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-48*.

M. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See "Adding Washer Fluid" under *Washer Fluid on page 10-28*.

If the vehicle has a diesel engine and/or an Allison Transmission, see the Duramax® Diesel Supplement.

Engine Oil

Checking Engine Oil

For diesel engine vehicles, see "Engine Oil" in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10-8 Vehicle Care

When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for three things:

- GM6094M

  Use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.

- SAE 5W-30

  SAE 5W-30 is best for the vehicle. These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- American Petroleum Institute (API) starburst symbol

Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Notice: **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cold Temperature Operation

If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29°C (−20°F), use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 engine oil. Both provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. Always use an oil that meets the required specification, GM6094M. See “What Kind of Engine Oil to Use” for more information.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

On some vehicles, when the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on to indicate that an oil change is necessary. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-47*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 miles). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset.
For vehicles without the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message, an oil change is needed when the OIL LIFE REMAINING percentage is near 0%. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 miles) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where the oil is changed prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message coming on, reset the system.

Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the Engine Oil Life System on most vehicles:

1. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC. If the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, the vehicle must be in P (Park) to access this display. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.
2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button on the DIC, or the trip odometer reset stem if the vehicle does not have DIC buttons, for more than five seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

On all vehicles, the Engine Oil Life System can be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal slowly three times within five seconds.
3. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC. If the display shows 100%, the system is reset. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34*.

If the vehicle has a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and it comes back on when the vehicle is started and/or the OIL LIFE REMAINING is near 0%, the Engine Oil Life System has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Fluid (4-Speed Transmission)

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

A good time to check the automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Because this operation can be a little difficult, it may be best to have this done at the dealer service department.

If not taken to the dealer, be sure to follow all the instructions here or a false reading on the dipstick could result.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if checking the transmission fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 32°C (90°F).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 82°C to 93°C (180°F to 200°F).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 24 km (15 miles) when outside temperatures are above 10°C (50°F). If it is colder than 10°C (50°F), drive the vehicle in 3 (Third) until the engine temperature gauge moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 10°C (50°F) or more. If it is colder than 10°C (50°F), the engine may have to idle longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, the fluid must be checked when hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot will give you a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

Checking the Fluid Level

Prepare the vehicle as follows:

1. Park the vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
2. With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in P (Park).
3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in P (Park).
4. Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:

1. Locate the transmission dipstick handle with this graphic which is located at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger side of the vehicle.

   See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.
2. Flip the handle up, then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT or cross-hatched area for a hot check. Be sure to keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.
5. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Consistency of Readings

Always check the fluid level at least twice using the procedure described previously. Consistency (repeatable readings) is important to maintaining proper fluid level. If readings are still inconsistent, contact the dealer.

How to Add Automatic Transmission Fluid

Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use.

Using a funnel, add fluid down the transmission dipstick tube only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. A cold check is used only as a reference. If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It does not take much fluid, generally less than 0.5 Liter (1 Pint). Do not overfill.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.**

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid,” earlier in this section.
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Fluid (6-Speed Transmission)

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is usually not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. The only reason for fluid loss is a transmission leak or overheated transmission. If a small leak is suspected, then use the following checking procedures to check the fluid level. However, if there is a large leak, then it may be necessary to have the vehicle towed to a dealer service department and have it repaired before driving the vehicle further.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.**

Change the fluid and filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*. Be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if checking the transmission fluid.**

Before checking the fluid level, prepare the vehicle as follows:

1. Start the engine and park the vehicle on a level surface. Keep the engine running.
2. Apply the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, move the shift lever back to P (Park).
4. Allow the engine to idle (500 – 800 rpm) for at least 1 minute. Slowly release the brake pedal.
5. Keep the engine running and press the Trip/Fuel button or trip odometer reset stem until TRANS TEMP (Transmission Temperature) displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC).
6. Using the TRANS TEMP reading, determine and perform the appropriate check procedure. If the TRANS TEMP reading is not within the required temperature ranges, allow the vehicle to cool, or operate the vehicle until the appropriate transmission fluid temperature is reached.

Cold Check Procedure

Use this procedure only as a reference to determine if the transmission has enough fluid to be operated safely until a hot check procedure can be made. The hot check procedure is the most accurate method to check the fluid level. Perform the hot check procedure at the first opportunity. Use this cold check procedure to check fluid level when the transmission temperature is between 27°C and 32°C (80°F and 90°F).

1. Locate the transmission dipstick at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger side of the vehicle.

   See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information.
2. Flip the handle up, then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Install the dipstick by pushing it back in all the way; wait three seconds, and then pull it back out again.
4. Check both sides of the dipstick and read the lower level. Repeat the check procedure to verify the reading.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10-16 Vehicle Care

5. If the fluid level is below the COLD check band, add only enough fluid as necessary to bring the level into the COLD band. It does not take much fluid, generally less than 0.5 Liter (1 Pint). Do not overfill.
6. Perform a hot check at the first opportunity after the transmission reaches a normal operating temperature between 71°C to 93°C (160°F to 200°F).
7. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way, then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Hot Check Procedure

Use this procedure to check the transmission fluid level when the transmission fluid temperature is between 71°C and 93°C (160°F and 200°F).

The hot check is the most accurate method to check the fluid level. The hot check should be performed at the first opportunity in order to verify the cold check. The fluid level rises as fluid temperature increases, so it is important to ensure the transmission temperature is within range.

1. Locate the transmission dipstick at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger side of the vehicle.

   See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information.
2. Flip the handle up, then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
3. Install the dipstick by pushing it back in all the way; wait three seconds, and then pull it back out again.
4. Check both sides of the dipstick and read the lower level. Repeat the check procedure to verify the reading.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Safe operating level is within the HOT cross hatch band on the dipstick. If the fluid level is not within the HOT band, and the transmission temperature is between 71°C and 93°C (160°F and 200°F), add or drain fluid as necessary to bring the level into the HOT band. If the fluid level is low, add only enough fluid to bring the level into the HOT band. It does not take much fluid, generally less than 0.5 L (1 pint). Do not overfill.
6. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way, then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Consistency of Readings

Always check the fluid level at least twice using the procedure described previously. Consistency (repeatable readings) is important to maintaining proper fluid level. If readings are still inconsistent, contact the dealer.

Manual Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer service department and have it repaired as soon as possible. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* for the proper fluid to use.

Hydraulic Clutch

It is not necessary to regularly check brake/clutch fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system. Adding fluid will not correct a leak. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

When to Check and What to Use

The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has this symbol on it. The common hydraulic clutch and brake master cylinder fluid reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Check and Add Fluid

Visually check the brake/clutch fluid reservoir to make sure the fluid level is at the MIN (minimum) line on the side of the reservoir. The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid system should be closed and sealed.

Do not remove the cap to check the fluid level or to top-off the fluid level. Remove the cap only when necessary to add the proper fluid until the level reaches the MIN line.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see “Pickup Models” under “Engine Air Cleaner/Filter” in the Duramax® Diesel Supplement for the correct inspection and replacement procedures.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

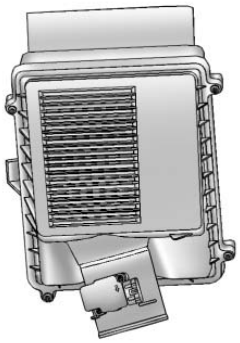
Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 80 000 km (50,000 mi) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information. If driving on dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

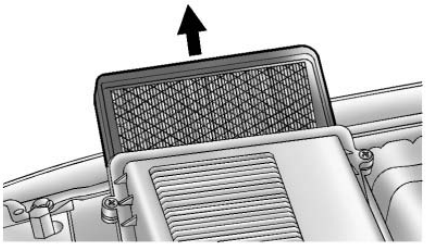
To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the vehicle by following Steps 1 through 6. When the engine air cleaner/filter is removed, lightly shake it to release loose dust and dirt. If the engine air cleaner/filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required. Never use compressed air to clean the filter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Locate the air cleaner/filter assembly. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6*.
2. Loosen the four screws on the cover of the housing and lift up the cover.



3. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the housing. Take care to dislodge as little dirt as possible.
4. Clean the engine air cleaner/filter sealing surfaces and the housing.
5. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
6. Reinstall the cover and tighten the screws.

⚠ WARNING

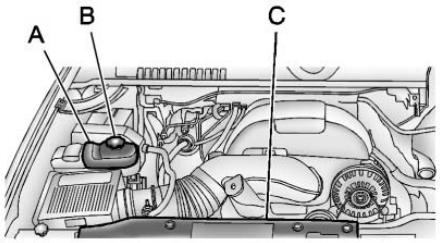
Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

Cooling System

If the vehicle has the Duramax® Diesel engine, see the Duramax® Diesel Supplement for more information.

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5.3 L V8 Engine Shown (4.3 L V6 Engine, 4.8 L V6 Engine, 6.0 L V8 Engine, and 6.2 L V8 Engine Similar)

A. Coolant Surge Tank

B. Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

C. Engine Cooling Fan

⚠ WARNING

An electric engine cooling fan can start even when the engine is not running. To avoid injury, always keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any engine cooling fan.

⚠ WARNING

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 50 000 km (30,000 miles) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for five years or 240 000 km (150,000 mi), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-24*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

⚠ WARNING

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37°C (−34°F), outside temperature
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature
- Protects against rust and corrosion
- Will not damage aluminum parts
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

Notice: **If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle's cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* for more information.**

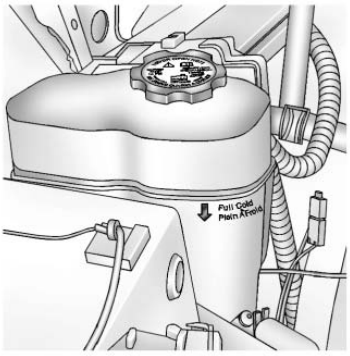
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking Coolant

The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.



The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, there may be a leak in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank for Gasoline Engines

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see “Cooling System” in the Duramax Diesel Supplement for the proper coolant fill procedure.

⚠ WARNING

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

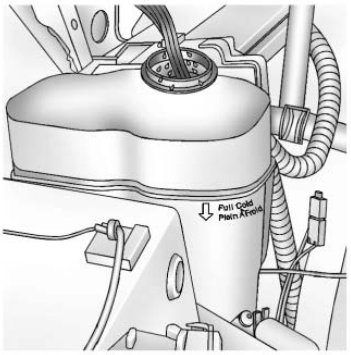
Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the coolant surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and coolant surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant as follows:

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the FULL COLD mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates approximately 90°C (195°F).

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.

5. Replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

6. Verify coolant level after the engine is shut off and the coolant is cold. If necessary, repeat coolant fill procedure Steps 1 through 6.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Engine Overheating

If the vehicle has the Duramax® Diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel Supplement for more information.

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of engine overheating.

There is a coolant temperature gauge on the vehicle's instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-19*.

In addition, there are ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE, ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE, and ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED messages in the Driver Information Center (DIC) on the instrument panel. See *Engine Cooling System Messages on page 5-46* and *Engine Power Messages on page 5-47*.

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. See Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

Notice: **If the engine catches fire while driving with no coolant, the vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 10-26* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ WARNING

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 10-26* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

The ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message, along with a low coolant condition, can indicate a serious problem.

If there is an engine overheat warning, but no steam is seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day
- Stops after high-speed driving
- Idles for long periods in traffic
- Tows a trailer; see *Trailer Towing on page 9-94*.

If the ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE or the ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE message appears with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. If stopped in a traffic jam, apply the brake, shift to N (Neutral); otherwise, shift to the highest gear while driving — D (Drive) or 3 (Third).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the temperature overheat gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for five minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down. Also, see "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" later in this section.

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

If an overheated engine condition exists and the ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED message displays, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps to prevent engine damage. In this mode, a loss in power and engine performance will be noticed. This operating mode allows the vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.**

Engine Fan

If the vehicle has a clutched engine cooling fan, when the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the fan is spinning slower and the clutch is not fully engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases as the clutch more fully engages, so an increase in fan noise may be heard. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

This fan noise may also be heard when starting the engine. It will go away as the fan clutch partially disengages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has electric cooling fans, the fans may be heard spinning at low speed during most everyday driving. The fans may turn off if no cooling is required. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, high outside temperatures, or operation of the air conditioning system, the fans may change to high speed and an increase in fan noise may be heard. This is normal and indicates that the cooling system is functioning properly. The fans will change to low speed when additional cooling is no longer required.

Power Steering Fluid

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless there is a leak suspected in the system or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.**

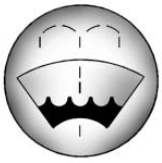
Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid needs to be added, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. Use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

The vehicle has a low washer fluid message on the DIC that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message displays, washer fluid will need to be added to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brakes

This vehicle has front disc brakes and could have rear drum brakes or rear disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ WARNING

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

If the vehicle has rear drum brakes, they do not have wear indicators, but if a rear brake rubbing noise is heard, have the rear brake linings inspected immediately. Rear brake drums should be removed and inspected each time the tires are removed for rotation or changing.

Drum brakes have an inspection hole to inspect lining wear during scheduled maintenance. When the front brake pads are replaced, have the rear brakes inspected, too.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Brake Fluid

The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ WARNING

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See “Checking Brake Fluid” in this section.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-29*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check the brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

Checking Brake Fluid

Check brake fluid by looking at the brake fluid reservoir. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6*.

The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have the brake hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery

If the vehicle is a Hybrid, see the Hybrid Supplement for more information.

This vehicle has a maintenance free battery (or batteries). Refer to the replacement number on the original battery label when a new battery is needed. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for battery location.

⚠ DANGER

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ WARNING

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 10-96* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

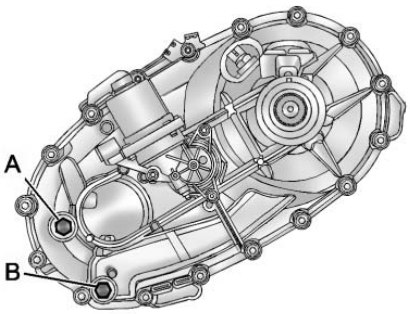
Four-Wheel Drive

Transfer Case

When to Check Lubricant

Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* to determine when to check the lubricant.

How to Check Lubricant

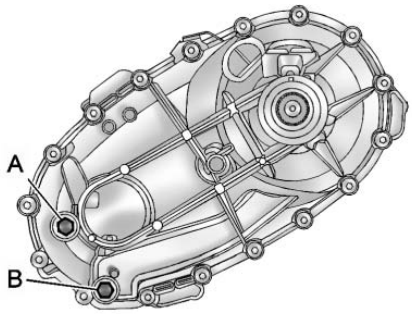


Electric Shift Transfer Case

A. Fill Plug

B. Drain Plug

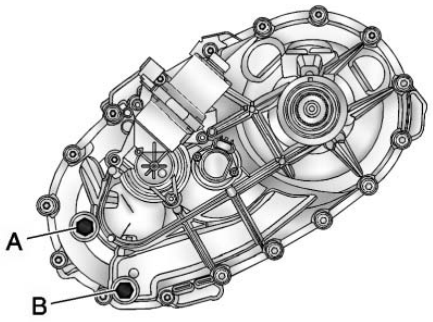
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Manual Shift Transfer Case

A. Fill Plug

B. Drain Plug



Active Transfer Case

A. Fill Plug

B. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

When to Change Lubricant

Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* to determine how often to change the lubricant.

What to Use

Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* to determine what kind of lubricant to use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

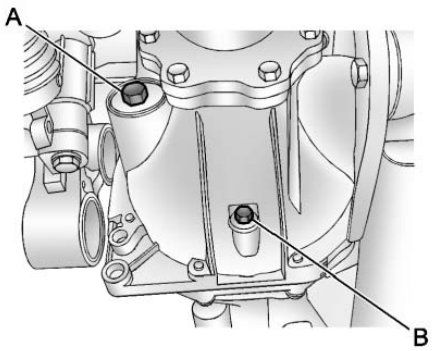
Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check front axle fluid unless a leak is suspected, or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant

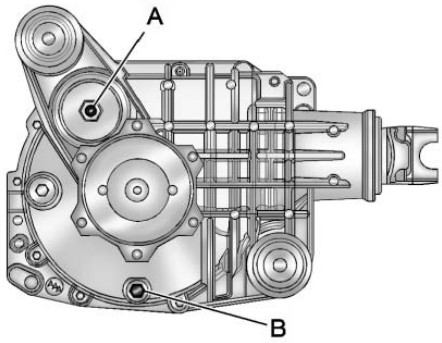
To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.



1500 Series

A. Fill Plug

B. Drain Plug



All Except 1500 Series

A. Fill Plug

B. Drain Plug

- When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level from 0 mm (0 in) to 3.2 mm (1/8 in) below the fill plug hole.
- When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Use

Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* to determine what kind of lubricant to use.

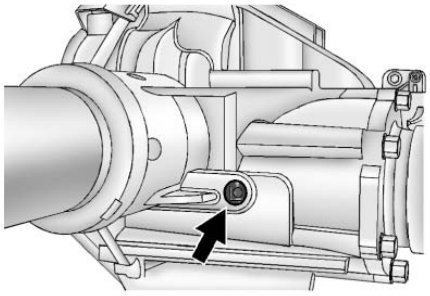
Rear Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

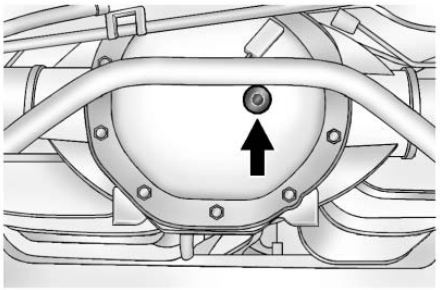
All axle assemblies are filled by volume of fluid during production. They are not filled to reach a certain level. When checking the fluid level on any axle, variations in the readings can be caused by factory fill differences between the minimum and the maximum fluid volume. Also, if a vehicle has just been driven before checking the fluid level, it may appear lower than normal because fluid has traveled out along the axle tubes and has not drained back to the sump area. Therefore, a reading taken five minutes after the vehicle has been driven will appear to have a lower fluid level than a vehicle that has been stationary for an hour or two. Remember that the rear axle assembly must be supported to get a true reading.

How to Check Lubricant



2500HD with 6.0 L

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



All Other Series and Engines

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

- For all 4.3 L, 4.8 L and 5.3 L 1500 Series applications, the proper level is 1.0 mm to 19.0 mm (0.04 in to 0.7 in) below the bottom of the fill hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.
- For all 6.0 L and 6.2 L 1500 Series applications, the proper level is from 15 mm to 40 mm (0.6 in to 1.6 in) below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.
- For all 6.0 L 2500HD Series applications, the proper level is from 0 mm to 13 mm (0 to 0.5 in) below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.
- For all 6.6 L Duramax Diesel 2500HD Series applications and all 3500 Series applications, the proper level is from 17 mm to 21 mm (0.6 in to 0.8 in) below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.

What to Use

Refer to *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* to determine what kind of lubricant to use.

Noise Control System

The following information relates to compliance with federal noise emission standards for vehicles with a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of more than 4 536 kg (10,000 lbs). The *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* provides information on maintaining the noise control system to minimize degradation of the noise emission control system during the life of your vehicle. The noise control system warranty is given in your warranty booklet.

These standards apply only to vehicles sold in the United States.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof:

1. The removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control, prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use; or
2. The use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below.

Insulation:

Removal of the noise shields or any underhood insulation.

Engine:

Removal or rendering engine speed governor, if the vehicle has one, inoperative so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

Fan and Drive:

- Removal of fan clutch, if the vehicle has one, or rendering clutch inoperative.
- Removal of the fan shroud, if the vehicle has one.

Air Intake:

- Removal of the air cleaner silencer.
- Modification of the air cleaner.

Exhaust:

- Removal of the muffler and/or resonator.
- Removal of the exhaust pipes and exhaust pipe clamps.

Starter Switch Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

   For manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- For automatic transmission vehicles, the ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- For manual transmission vehicles, the ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when you press the key release button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On all vehicles, the ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

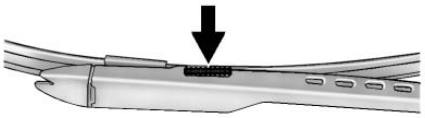
Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information on wiper blade inspection.

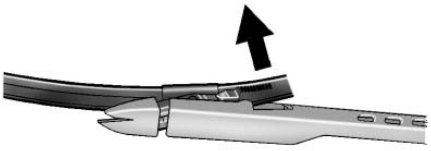
Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. To remove the wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper arm connector away from the windshield.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Squeeze the grooved areas on each side of the blade, and turn the blade assembly away from the arm connector.



3. Install the new blade onto the arm connector and make sure the grooved areas are fully set in the locked position.

For the proper type and size, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-11*.

Glass Replacement

If the windshield or front side glass must be replaced, see your dealer to determine the correct replacement glass.

Headlamp Aiming

The vehicle has a visual optical headlamp aiming system. The aim of the headlamps has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the aim of the headlamps may be affected and adjustment may be necessary.

If oncoming vehicles flash their high beams at you, this may mean the vertical aim of the headlamps needs to be adjusted.

It is recommended that the vehicle be taken to your dealer for service if the headlamps need to be adjusted. It is possible, however, to re-aim the headlamps as described.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

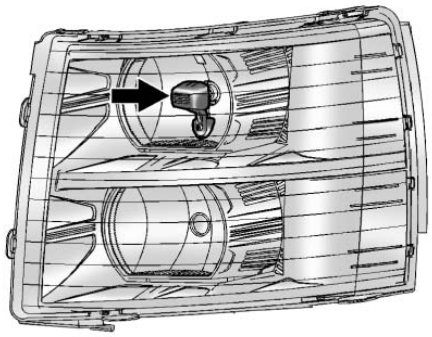
The vehicle should:

- Be placed so the headlamps are 7.6 m (25 ft) from a light-colored wall.
- Have all four tires on a level surface which is level all the way to the wall.
- Be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall.
- Not have any snow, ice, or mud on it.
- Be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being performed.
- Be loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 75 kg (160 lbs) sitting on the driver seat.
- Have the tires properly inflated.
- Have the spare tire in its proper location in the vehicle.

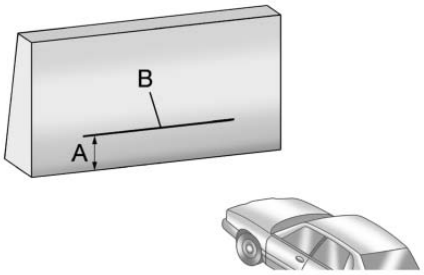
Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle's low-beam headlamps. The high-beam headlamps will be correctly aimed if the low-beam headlamps are aimed properly.

To adjust the vertical aim:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*



2. Locate the aim dot on the lens of the low-beam headlamp.
3. Record the distance from the ground to the aim dot on the low-beam headlamp.



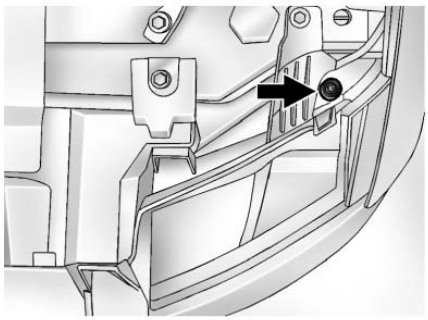
4. At a wall, measure from the ground upward (A) to the recorded distance from Step 3 and mark it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Draw or tape a horizontal line (B) on the wall the width of the vehicle at the height of the mark in Step 4.

Notice: **Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.**

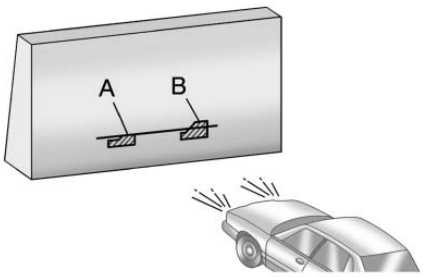
6. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being adjusted. This allows only the beam of light from the headlamp being adjusted to be seen on the flat surface.



7. Locate the vertical headlamp aiming screws, which are under the hood near each headlamp assembly.

   The adjustment screw can be turned with an E8 Torx® socket.

8. Turn the vertical aiming screw until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise to raise or lower the angle of the beam.



9. Make sure that the light from the headlamp is positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line. The lamp on the left (A) shows the correct headlamp aim. The lamp on the right (B) shows the incorrect headlamp aim.

10. Repeat Steps 7 through 9 for the opposite headlamp.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-46*.

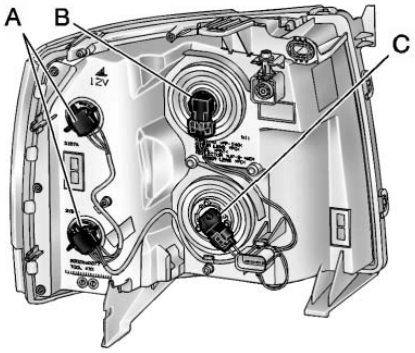
For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ WARNING

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Headlamps (Silverado)



A. Park/Turn Signal/ Sidemarker Lamp

B. Low-Beam Headlamp

C. High-Beam Headlamp

1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*
2. If you are replacing the bulb on the passenger side, remove the Engine Air Cleaner cover. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-18* for more information.
3. Reach in and access the bulb sockets from inside the engine compartment.
4. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly and pull it straight out.
5. Unplug the electrical connector from the old bulb by releasing the clips on the bulb socket.
6. Replace it with a new bulb.
7. Plug in the electrical connector.
8. Reinstall the new bulb socket into the headlamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

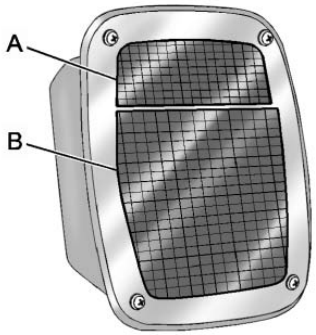
Pick-Up Box Identification and Fender Marker Lamps

The pick-up box identification lamps are LEDs. For replacement of the LED lighting assembly contact your dealer.

To replace a pickup box fender marker lamp bulb:

1. Press the tab from the back to remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove from the lamp assembly.
3. Gently pry the bulb from the socket.
4. Install the new bulb in socket.
5. Reinstall socket into lamp assembly.
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly.

Taillamps (Chassis Cab Models)



A. Backup Lamp

B. Stoplamp/Taillamp/Turn Signal Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

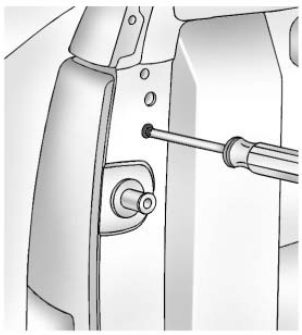
1. Remove the four screws.
2. Lift the lens off the lamp assembly.
3. Turn the old bulb counterclockwise and pull the it straight out from the socket.
4. Install a new bulb into the socket, turn it clockwise, and press it in until it is tight.
5. Reinstall the lens and the four screws.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

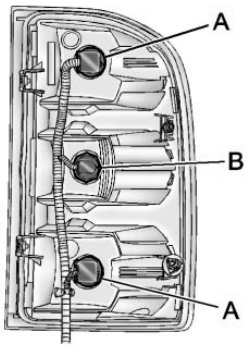
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 2-11* for more information.



2. Remove the two rear lamp assembly screws near the tailgate latch strikerpost and pull rearward until disengaging the two outer pins on the taillamp assembly from the vehicle.



A. Stoplamp/Taillamp/Turn Signal Lamp

B. Back-up Lamp

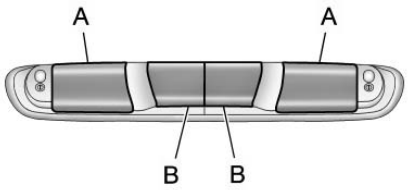
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp assembly.
4. Pull the old bulb straight out from the socket.
5. Press a new bulb into the socket and turn the socket clockwise into the taillamp assembly.
6. Reinstall the taillamp assembly.

Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) and Cargo Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Remove the two screws and lift off the lamp assembly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A. Cargo Lamp

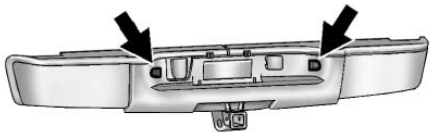
B. Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) Bulb

2. On the reverse side of the lamp assembly, remove the bulb socket by turning it one quarter turn counterclockwise and pull it straight out.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of the socket.
4. Install the bulb by pushing the bulb straight into the socket.
5. Install the bulb socket into the lamp asembly by turning it one quarter turn clockwise.
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Reach under the rear bumper for the bulb socket.



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb socket out of the connector.
3. Pull the old bulb straight out from the bulb socket.
4. Install the new bulb.
5. Reverse Steps 1 and 2 to reinstall the bulb socket.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up Lamp	921
Back-up Lamp*	1156
Cargo Lamp and Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	912
Fender Marker Lamp	168
High-Beam Headlamp	9005LL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Low-Beam Headlamp	H11LL
License Plate Lamp	168
Sidemarker Lamp/ Stoplamp/Taillamp/ Turn Signal Lamp	3047
Stoplamp/Turn Signal Lamp/ Taillamp*	1157K
* Chassis Cab Models	

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect the following in the vehicle:

- Headlamp Wiring
- Windshield Wiper Motor
- Power Windows and Other Power Accessories

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without – like the radio or cigarette lighter – and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

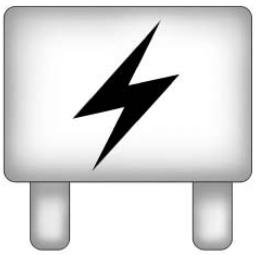
Engine Compartment Fuse Block

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax Diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

The Engine Compartment Fuse Block is located in the engine compartment, on the driver side of the vehicle.

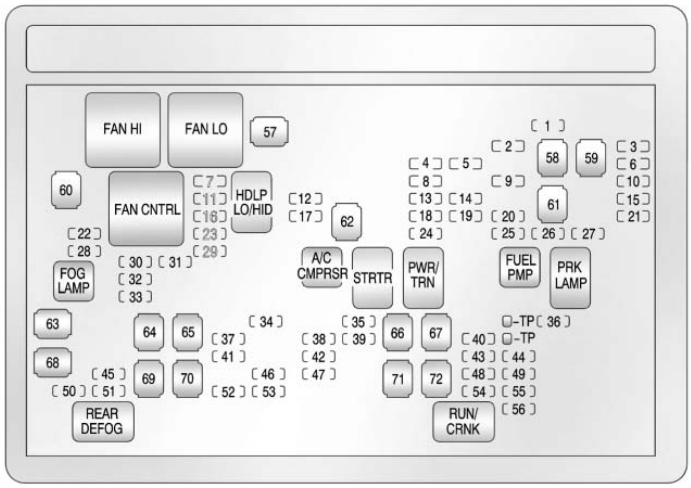
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Lift the cover to access the fuse block.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**

To remove fuses, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.



Fuses	Usage
1	Right Trailer Stop/ Turn Lamp
2	Electronic Suspension Control, Automatic Level Control Exhaust

Fuses	Usage
3	Left Trailer Stop/ Turn Lamp
4	Engine Controls
5	Engine Control Module, Throttle Control

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
6	Trailer Brake Controller
7	Front Washer
8	Oxygen Sensor
9	Antilock Brakes System 2
10	Trailer Back-up Lamps
11	Driver Side Low-Beam Headlamp
12	Engine Control Module (Battery)
13	Fuel Injectors, Ignition Coils (Right Side)
14	Transmission Control Module (Battery)
15	Vehicle Back-up Lamps

Fuses	Usage
16	Passenger Side Low-Beam Headlamp
17	Air Conditioning Compressor
18	Oxygen Sensors
19	Transmission Controls (Ignition)
20	Fuel Pump
21	Fuel System Control Module
22	Not Used
23	Not Used
24	Fuel Injectors, Ignition Coils (Left Side)
25	Trailer Park Lamps
26	Driver Side Park Lamps
27	Passenger Side Park Lamps

Fuses	Usage
28	Fog Lamps
29	Horn
30	Passenger Side High-Beam Headlamp
31	Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)
32	Driver Side High-Beam Headlamp
33	Daytime Running Lights 2
34	Sunroof
35	Key Ignition System, Theft Deterrent System
36	Windshield Wiper
37	SEO B2 Upfitter Usage (Battery)
38	Electric Adjustable Pedals

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
39	Climate Controls (Battery)
40	Airbag System (Ignition)
41	Amplifier
42	Audio System
43	Miscellaneous (Ignition), Cruise Control
44	Not Used
45	Airbag System (Battery)
46	Instrument Panel Cluster
47	Power Take-Off
48	Auxiliary Climate Control (Ignition)

Fuses	Usage
49	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)
50	Rear Defogger
51	Heated Mirrors
52	SEO B1 Upfitter Usage (Battery)
53	Cigarette Lighter, Auxiliary Power Outlet
54	SEO Upfitter Usage
55	Climate Controls (Ignition)
56	Engine Control Module, Secondary Fuel Pump (Ignition)

J-Case Fuses	Usage
57	Cooling Fan 1
58	Not Used
59	Heavy Duty Antilock Brake System
60	Cooling Fan 2
61	Antilock Brake System 1
62	Starter
63	Stud 2 (Trailer Brakes)
64	Left Bussed Electrical Center 1
65	Not Used
66	Heated Windshield Washer System
67	Transfer Case

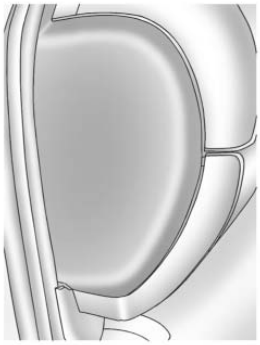
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

J-Case Fuses	Usage
68	Stud 1 (Trailer Connector Battery Power) (Optional - 40A Fuse Required)
69	Mid-Bussed Electrical Center 1
70	Climate Control Blower
71	Not Used
72	Left Bussed Electrical Center 2

Relays	Usage
FAN HI	Cooling Fan High Speed
FAN LO	Cooling Fan Low Speed

Relays	Usage
FAN CNTRL	Cooling Fan Control
HDLP LO/HID	Low-Beam Headlamp
FOG LAMP	Front Fog Lamps
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
STRTR	Starter
PWR/TRN	Powertrain
FUEL PMP	Fuel Pump
PRK LAMP	Parking Lamps
REAR DEFOG	Rear Defogger
RUN/CRNK	Switched Power

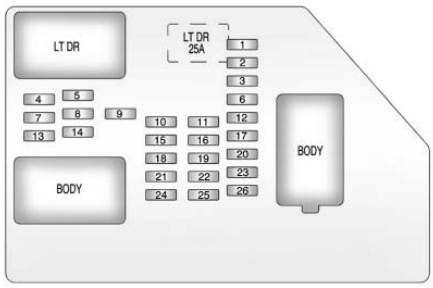
Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse block access door is located on the driver side edge of the instrument panel.

Pull off the cover to access the fuse block.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The vehicle may not use all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Usage
1	Rear Seats
2	Rear Accessory Power Outlet
3	Steering Wheel Controls Backlight
4	Driver Door Module
5	Dome Lamps, Driver Side Turn Signal
6	Driver Side Turn Signal, Stoplamp
7	Instrument Panel Back Lighting
8	Passenger Side Turn Signal, Stoplamp
9	Passenger Door Module, Driver Unlock
10	Power Door Lock 2 (Unlock Feature)
11	Power Door Lock 2 (Lock Feature)
12	Stoplamps, Center High- Mounted Stoplamp
13	Rear Climate Controls
14	Power Mirror
15	Body Control Module (BCM)
16	Accessory Power Outlets
17	Interior Lamps
18	Power Door Lock 1 (Unlock Feature)
19	Rear Seat Entertainment
20	Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist, Power Liftgate
21	Power Door Lock 1 (Lock Feature)
22	Driver Information Center (DIC)
23	Rear Wiper
24	Cooled Seats
25	Driver Seat Module, Remote Keyless Entry System
26	Driver Power Door Lock (Unlock Feature)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

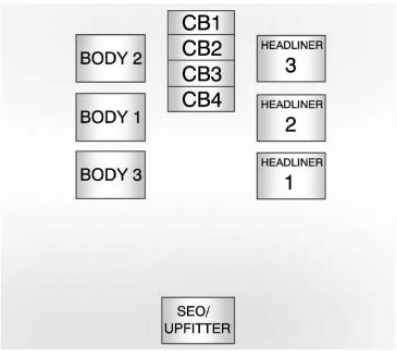
Circuit Breaker	Usage
LT DR	Driver Side Power Window Circuit Breaker

Harness Connector	Usage
LT DR	Driver Door Harness Connection
BODY	Harness Connector
BODY	Harness Connector

Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The center instrument panel fuse block is located underneath the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.

Top View



Harness Connector	Usage
BODY 2	Body Harness Connector 2
BODY 1	Body Harness Connector 1
BODY 3	Body Harness Connector 3
HEADLINER 3	Headliner Harness Connector 3

Harness Connector	Usage
HEADLINER 2	Headliner Harness Connector 2
HEADLINER 1	Headliner Harness Connector 1
SEO/ UPFITTER	Special Equipment Option Upfitter Harness Connector

Circuit Breaker	Usage
CB1	Passenger Side Power Window Circuit Breaker
CB2	Passenger Seat Circuit Breaker
CB3	Driver Seat Circuit Breaker
CB4	Rear Sliding Window

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have a blowout and a serious accident. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Under inflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold.
- Over inflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If your tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only your dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 55 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation on page 10-65* for inflation pressure adjustment for high speed driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

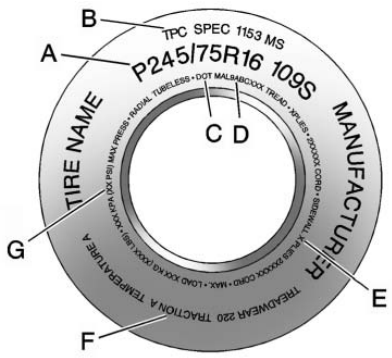
20-Inch Tires

If your vehicle has the optional 20-inch P275/55R20 size tires, they are classified as touring tires and are designed for on road use. The low-profile, wide tread design is not recommended for “off-road” driving or commercial uses such as snow plowing. See *Off-Road Driving on page 9-7* and *Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment on page 9-123* for additional information.

Notice: **If the vehicle has low-profile tires, they are more susceptible to damage from road hazards or curb impact than standard profile tires. Tire and/or wheel assembly damage can occur when coming into contact with road hazards like, potholes, or sharp edged objects, or when sliding into a curb. The vehicle warranty does not cover this type of damage. Keep tires set to the correct inflation pressure and, when possible avoid contact with curbs, potholes, and other road hazards.**

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into the sidewall. The following illustrations are examples of a typical P-Metric and a LT-Metric tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(A) Tire Size: The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the “Tire Size” illustration later in this section for more detail.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

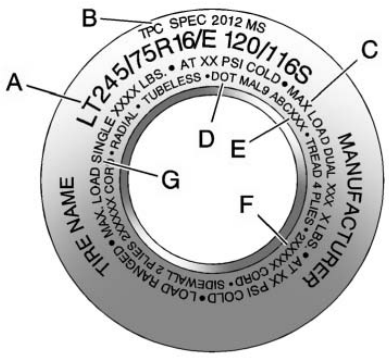
(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information, see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-78* .

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


A
B
C
D
E
F
G
TPC SPEC 2012 MS
LT245/75R16/E 120/116S
MAX LOAD SINGLE XXXX LBS. • AT XX PSI COLD • TUBELESS • DOT MA9 ABCXXX • RADIAL • MAX LOAD DUAL XXX LBS • TREAD 4 PLIES 2XXXXX CORD • SIDEWALL 2 PLIES 2XXXX CORD • LOAD RANGED • MAX LOAD SINGLE XXX LBS • AT XX PSI COLD • MAX XX COR
TIRE NAME
MANUFACTURER

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

(A) Tire Size: The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the “Tire Size” illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) Dual Tire Maximum Load: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used in a dual configuration. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

(D) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

(E) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(F) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

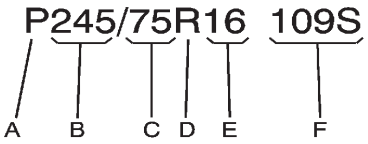
(G) Single Tire Maximum Load: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used as a single. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Designations

Tire Size

The following examples show the different parts of a tire size.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item C of the tire illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

(A) Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letters LT as the first two characters in the tire size means a light truck tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item C of the light truck (LT-Metric) tire illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Load Range : Load Range.

(G) Service Description: The service description indicates the load index and speed rating of a tire. If two numbers are given as in the example, 120/116, then this represents the load index for single versus dual wheel usage (single/dual). The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in psi (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascal).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in psi (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascal) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* .

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs). See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-74*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-78*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Tire overloading and over-heating which could lead to a blowout.**
- **Premature or irregular wear.**
- **Poor handling.**
- **Reduced fuel economy.**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear.**
- **Poor handling.**
- **Rough ride.**
- **Needless damage from road hazards.**

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load-carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more.

Do not forget to check the pressure of the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. See *Full-Size Spare Tire on page 10-95* for additional information.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P265/70R17 or P275/55R20 size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to 20 kPa (3 psi) above the recommended cold tire pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label.

When you end this high-speed driving, return the tires to the cold inflation pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-67* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry Canada

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-18* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS will illuminate the low tire pressure warning symbol located on the instrument panel cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the tire loading information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

At the same time a message to check the pressure in a specific tire appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. If your vehicle has DIC buttons, tire pressure levels can be viewed by the driver. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-34* and *Tire Messages on page 5-51*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71*, *Tire Rotation on page 10-71* and *Tires on page 10-55*.

Notice: **Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.**

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message is also displayed. The low tire warning light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light and DIC message to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light and DIC message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The DIC message and TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 10-75*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you rotate your vehicle's tires or replace one or more of the TPMS sensors, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer for service.

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. If increasing the tire's air pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall.

To decrease air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

You have two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than two minutes, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you need to start over.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter's LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time for approximately five seconds. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.

   If your vehicle does not have RKE, press the Driver Information Center (DIC) vehicle information button until the PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN TIRE POSITIONS message displays. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.

   If your vehicle does not have RKE or DIC buttons, press the trip odometer reset stem located on the instrument panel cluster until the PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN TIRE POSITIONS message displays. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.

4. Start with the driver side front tire.
5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for five seconds, or until a horn chirp sounds. The horn chirp, which may take up to 30 seconds to sound, confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and that the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
9. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Inspection

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Always remove the tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tire Rotation

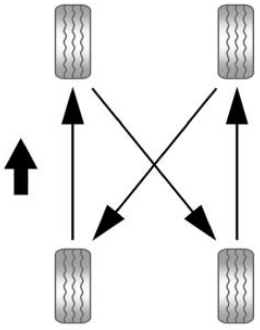
Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km (7,500 miles). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels.

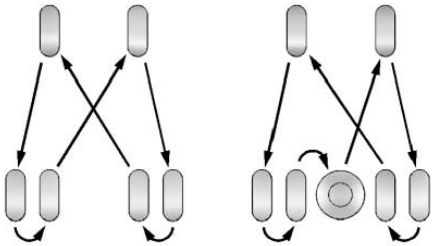
See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-74* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-80*.

If your vehicle has dual rear wheels, also see *Dual Tire Rotation on page 10-73*.

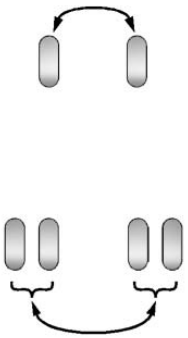


If your vehicle has single rear wheels and the tread design for the front tires is the same as the rear tires, use the rotation pattern shown here when rotating the tires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If your vehicle has dual rear wheels and the tread design for the front tires is the same as the rear tires, always use one of the correct rotation patterns shown here when rotating the tires.



If your vehicle has dual rear wheels and the tread design for the front tires is different from the dual rear tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here when rotating the tires.

The dual tires are rotated as a pair, and the inside rear tires become the outside rear tires.

When you install dual wheels, be sure the vent holes in the inner and outer wheels on each side are lined up.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.

Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-81*.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

If your vehicle has a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), reset the TPMS sensors after rotating the tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-67*.

Make sure the spare tire, if your vehicle has one, is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, tighten the cable. See “Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools” under *Tire Changing on page 10-83*.

Dual Tire Rotation

When the vehicle is new, or whenever a wheel, wheel bolt or wheel nut is replaced, check the wheel nut torque after 160, 1 600 and 10 000 km (100, 1,000 and 6,000 miles) of driving. For proper torque and wheel nut tightening information, see “Removing the Spare Tire and Tools” under *Tire Changing on page 10-83*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The outer tire on a dual wheel setup generally wears faster than the inner tire. Your tires will wear more evenly and last longer if you rotate the tires periodically, see *Tire Inspection on page 10-71* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-71*. Also see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

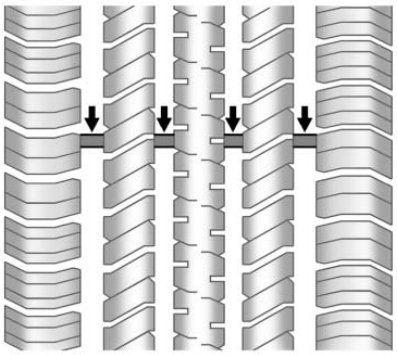
⚠ WARNING

If you operate your vehicle with a tire that is badly underinflated, the tire can overheat. An overheated tire can lose air suddenly or catch fire. You or others could be injured. Be sure all tires (including the spare) are properly inflated.

See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*, for information on proper tire inflation.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-71* for additional information.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This is also true for the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is not being used. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. Tires will typically need to be replaced due to wear before they may need to be replaced due to age. Consult the tire manufacturer for more information on when tires should be replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 10-56* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-71* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ WARNING

Tires could explode during improper service. You or others could be injured or killed if you attempt to mount or dismount a tire. Only your dealer or an authorized tire service center should mount and dismount the tires.

⚠ WARNING

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes,

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle might not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types could also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare than the road tires (those originally installed on your vehicle). When new, your vehicle included a spare tire and wheel assembly with a similar overall diameter as your vehicle's road tires and wheels, so it is all right to drive on it. Because this spare was developed for use on your vehicle, it will not affect vehicle handling.

⚠ WARNING

If you use bias-ply tires on the vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system may give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec-rated tires are installed on your vehicle. Non-TPC Spec-rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec-rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-65*.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* for more information about the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this could affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ WARNING

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 10-75* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on the vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if there is unusual tire wear or the vehicle pulls to one side or the other, the alignment should be checked. If the vehicle vibrates when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of the wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, and TPMS sensors for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

Whenever a wheel, wheel bolt or wheel nut is replaced on a dual wheel setup, check the wheel nut torque after 100, 1,000 and 6,000 miles (160, 1 600 and 10 000 km) of driving. For proper torque, see “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-81* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ WARNING

Putting a used wheel on the vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Chains

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle has dual wheels or P265/65R18, P275/55R20 or LT265/70R17 size tires, do not use tire chains. They can damage your vehicle because there is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust, or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin your vehicle's wheels.

If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

Notice: **If your vehicle does not have dual wheels and has a tire size other than P265/65R18, P275/55R20 or LT265/70R17, use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle. Do not use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.**

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely under-inflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely under-inflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-5*.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission shift lever in P (Park), or shift a manual transmission to 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear – not in N (Neutral).

(Continued)

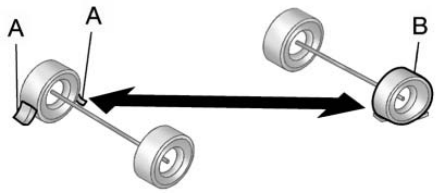
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING (Continued)

4. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
5. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).



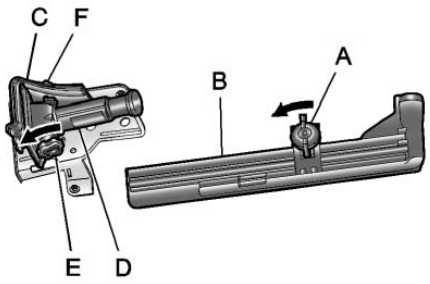
A. Wheel Block

B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

Tire Changing

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools



Crew Cab

A. Wing Nut Retaining Tool Kit

B. Tool Kit

C. Wheel Blocks

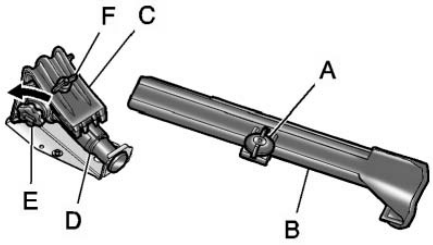
D. Jack

E. Jack Knob

F. Wing Nut Retaining Wheel Blocks

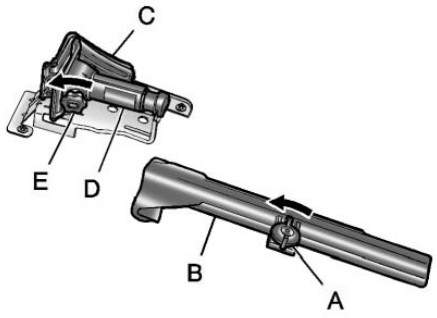
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10-84 Vehicle Care



Regular Cab

A. Wing Nut Retaining Tool Kit
B. Tool Kit
C. Wheel Blocks
D. Jack
E. Jack Knob
F. Wing Nut Retaining Wheel Blocks



Extended Cab

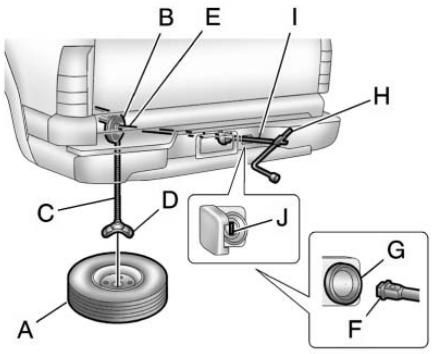
A. Wing Nut Retaining Tool Kit
B. Tool Kit
C. Wheel Blocks
D. Jack
E. Jack Knob

For regular cab models, the equipment you will need is behind the passenger seat. For extended and crew cab models, the equipment is on the shelf behind the passenger side second row seat.

1. Turn the knob on the jack counterclockwise to lower the jack head to release the jack from its holder.
2. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.
3. Remove the wing nut used to retain the storage bag and tools by turning it counterclockwise.

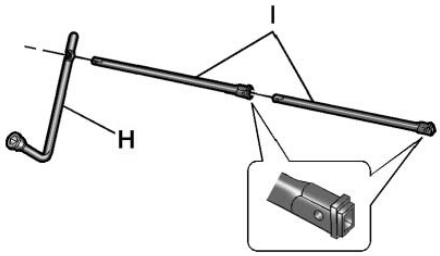
You will use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



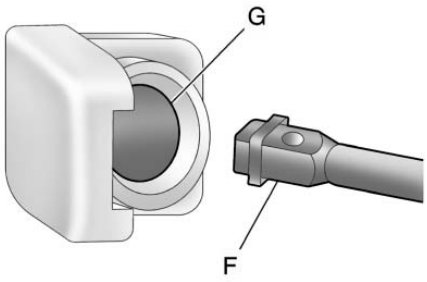
A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire/Wheel Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft
F. Hoist End of Extension Tool
G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
H. Wheel Wrench
I. Jack Handle Extensions
J. Spare Tire Lock (If equipped)

1. Open the spare tire lock cover on the bumper and use the ignition key to remove the spare tire lock (J). To remove the spare tire lock, insert the ignition key turn and pull straight out.



2. Assemble the wheel wrench (H) and the two jack handle extensions (I) as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

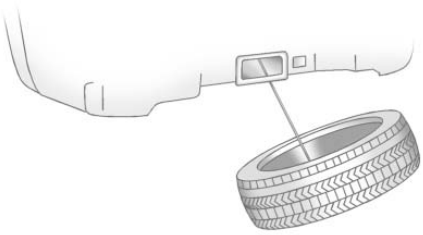


3. Insert the hoist end (open end) (F) of the extension through the hole (G) in the rear bumper.

   Do not use the chiseled end of the wheel wrench.

   Be sure the hoist end of the extension (F) connects to the hoist shaft (E). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.
4. Turn the wheel wrench (H) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground.

   Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.
5. Pull the spare tire out from under the vehicle.

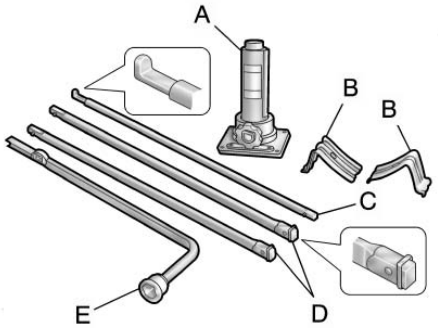


6. Tilt the tire toward the vehicle with some slack in the cable to access the tire/wheel retainer.

   Tilt the retainer and pull it through the center of the wheel along with the cable and spring.
7. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

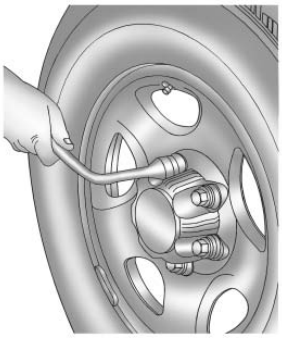
Use the following pictures and instructions to remove the flat tire and raise the vehicle.



The tools you will be using include the jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the jack handle (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).

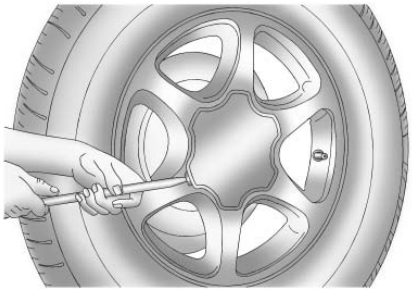
1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-81* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

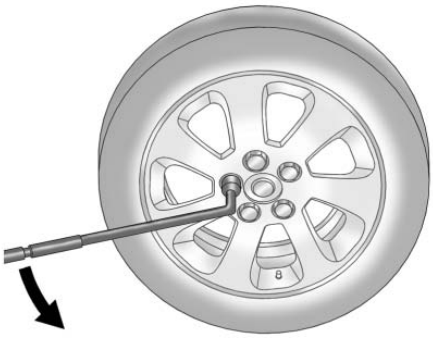


2. If your vehicle has wheel nut caps, loosen them by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise.

   If the vehicle has a center cap with wheel nut caps, the wheel nut caps are designed to stay with the center cap after they are loosened. Remove the entire center cap.

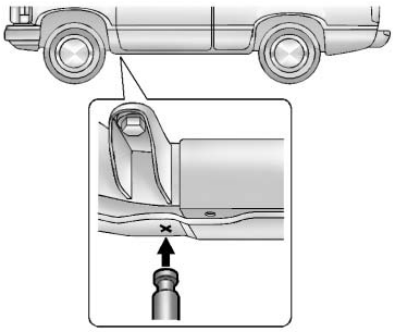


If the wheel has a smooth center cap, place the chisel end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel, and gently pry it out.



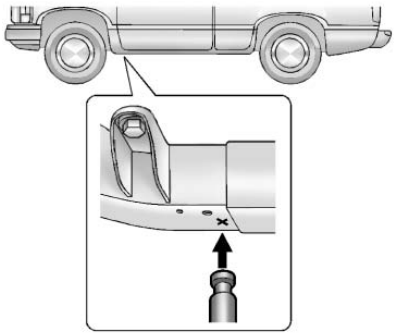
3. Use the wheel wrench and turn it counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



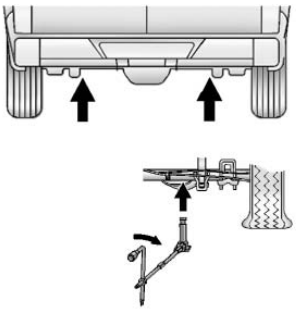
Front Position - 1500 Models

4. Position the jack under the vehicle as shown. If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle (1500 Model vehicles), position the jack under the bracket attached to the vehicle's frame, behind the flat tire.



Front Position - All Other Models

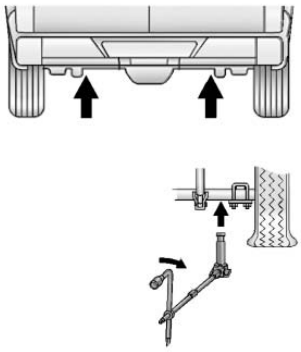
Position the jack under the vehicle as shown. If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle (all other models), position the jack on the frame behind the flat tire.



Rear Position – 1500 Models

5. If the flat tire is on the rear, for 1500 models position the jack under the rear axle about 2 inches (5 cm) inboard of the shock absorber bracket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Rear Position – All Other Models

For all other models, position the jack under the rear axle between the spring anchor and the shock absorber bracket.

If you have added a snow plow to the front of your vehicle, lower the snow plow fully before raising the vehicle.

Make sure that the jack head is positioned so that the rear axle is resting securely between the grooves that are on the jack head.

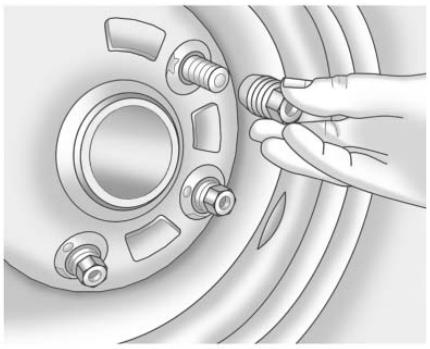
⚠ WARNING

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ WARNING

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

6. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to fit under the wheel well.

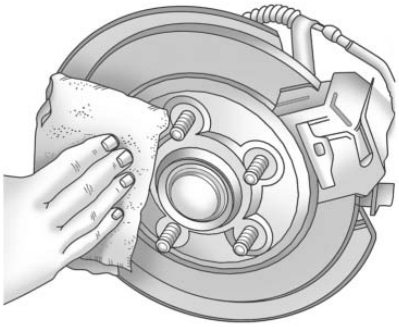


7. Remove all the wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-81*.



8. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
9. Install the spare tire.

⚠ WARNING

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

10. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel.
11. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
12. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ WARNING

If wheel studs are damaged, they can break. If all the studs on a wheel broke, the wheel could come off and cause a crash. If any stud is damaged because of a loose-running wheel, it could be that all of the studs are damaged. To be sure, replace all studs on the wheel. If the stud holes in a wheel have become larger, the wheel could collapse in operation. Replace any wheel if its stud holes have become larger or distorted in any way. Inspect

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING (Continued)

hubs and hub-piloted wheels for damage. Because of loose running wheels, piloting pad damage may occur and require replacement of the entire hub, for proper centering of the wheels. When replacing studs, hubs, wheel nuts or wheels, be sure to use GM original equipment parts.

⚠ WARNING

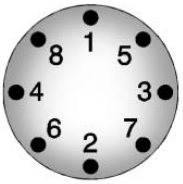
Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



13. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

For vehicles with dual wheels, have a technician check the wheel nut tightness of all wheels with a torque wrench after the first 100 miles (160 km) and then 1,000 miles (1600 km) after that. Repeat this service whenever you have a tire removed or serviced. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall either the center cap, or bolt-on hub cap, depending on what your vehicle is equipped with. For center caps, place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel. For bolt-on hub caps, align the plastic nut caps with the wheel nuts and then tighten by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten.

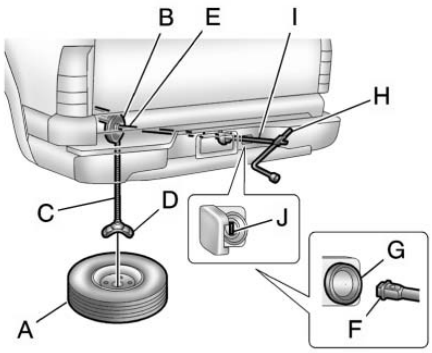
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ WARNING

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Notice: **Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up can damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.**

Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier.



A. Flat or Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire/Wheel Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

F. Hoist End of Extension Tool

G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole

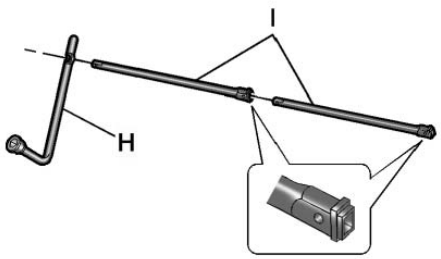
H. Wheel Wrench

I. Jack Handle Extensions

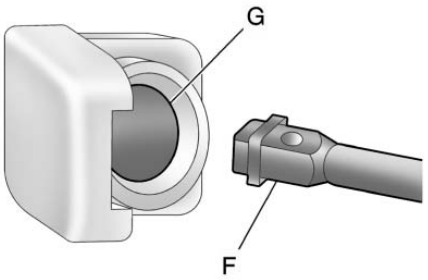
J. Spare Tire Lock (If Equipped)

1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down, and to the rear.
2. Pull the cable and spring through the center of the wheel. Tilt the wheel retainer plate down and through the center wheel.

   Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.



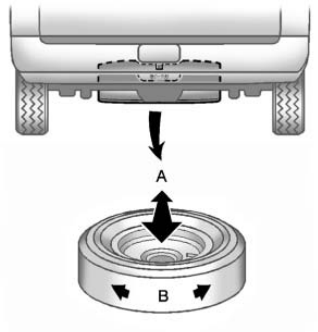
3. Attach the wheel wrench (H) and extensions (I) together, as shown.



4. Insert the hoist end (F) through the hole (G) in the rear bumper and onto the hoist shaft.

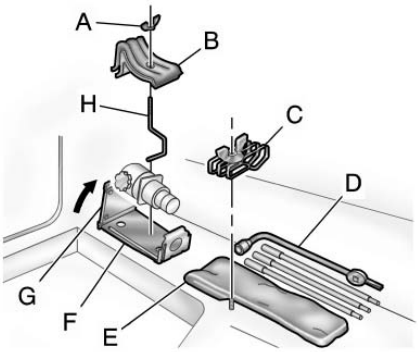
   Do not use the chiseled end of the wheel wrench.
5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.
8. Reinstall the spare tire lock, if the vehicle has one.

To store the jack and jack tools:



A. Wing Nut Retaining Wheel Blocks
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut Retaining Tool Kit
D. Wheel Wrench and Extensions
E. Tool Bag
F. Jack Mounting Bracket
G. Jack
H. Bolt Retaining Wheel Blocks

1. Put the tools (D) in the tool bag (E) and place them in the retaining bracket (C).
2. Tighten down the wing nut (C).
3. Assemble the wheel blocks (B) and jack (G) together with the wing nut (A) and retaining bolt (H).
4. Position the jack (G) in the mounting bracket (F). Position the holes in the base of the jack (G) onto the pin in the mounting bracket (F).
5. Return them to their original location in the vehicle. For more information, refer to “Removing the Spare Tire and Tools” for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Full-Size Spare Tire

Your vehicle, when new, had a fully-inflated spare tire. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install or store a spare tire, see “Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare” and “Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools” under *Tire Changing on page 10-83*.

Notice: **If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage the vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle.**

Your vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires originally installed on your vehicle. This spare tire was developed for use on your vehicle, so it is all right to drive on it. If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed, keep the vehicle in two-wheel drive.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, the spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together. If your vehicle has a spare tire that does not match your vehicle's original road tires and wheels in size and type, do not include the spare in the tire rotation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

If the vehicle's battery (or batteries) has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ WARNING

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. If you have a vehicle with a diesel engine with two batteries, you should know before you begin that, especially in cold weather, you may not be able to get enough power from a single battery in another vehicle to start your diesel engine. If your vehicle has more than one battery, using the battery that is closer to the starter will reduce electrical resistance. This is located on the passenger side, in the rear of the engine compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause an unwanted ground connection. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

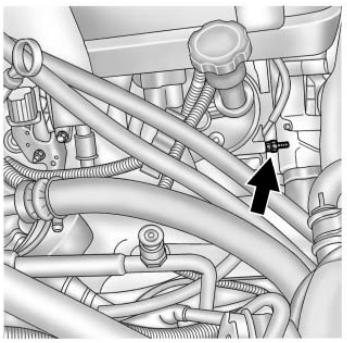
   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in Neutral before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, not in Neutral.

Notice: **If you leave the radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always turn off the radio and other accessories when jump starting the vehicle.**

4. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all the lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

5. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminal locations on that vehicle.

   The positive (+) terminal, is located under a red plastic cover at the positive battery post. To uncover the positive (+) terminal, open the red plastic cover.



   If your vehicle has a gasoline engine, the remote negative (−) terminal is a stud located on the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

right front of the engine, where the negative battery cable attaches.

If your vehicle has a diesel engine, the remote negative (−) terminal is the negative (−) post on the auxiliary battery on the driver side of the engine compartment.

For more information on the location of the remote positive (+) and remote negative (−) terminals, see *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6*

⚠ WARNING

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Using an open flame near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ WARNING

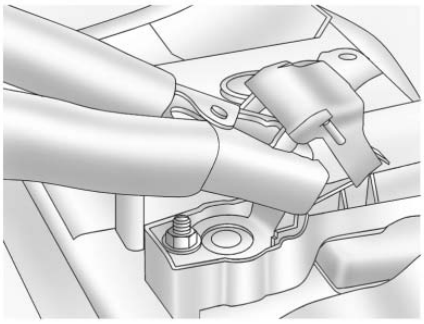
Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (−) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (−) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



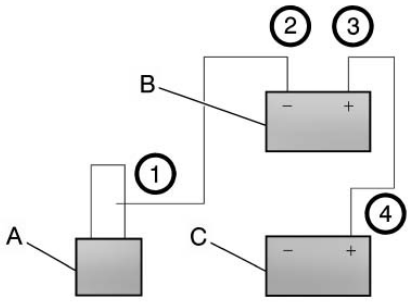
5.3L engine (4.3L, 4.8L, 6.0L and 6.2L similar)

7. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the dead battery.
8. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
9. Now connect the black negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step.
10. Connect the other end of the negative (−) cable to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to the remote negative (−) terminal, on the vehicle with the dead battery.
11. Start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
12. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (−) Terminal

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (−) Terminals

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle that had the bad battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the positive (+) terminal cover, to its original position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing

Towing the Vehicle

Notice: **To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Care must be taken with vehicles that have low ground clearance and/or special equipment.**

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” in this section.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle, such as a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

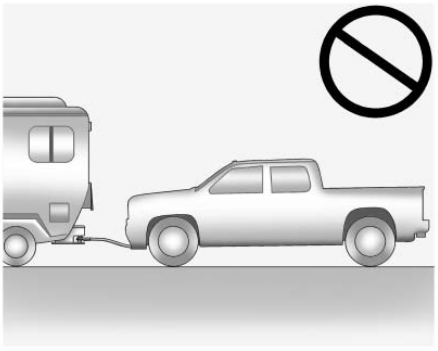
Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dinghy Towing

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

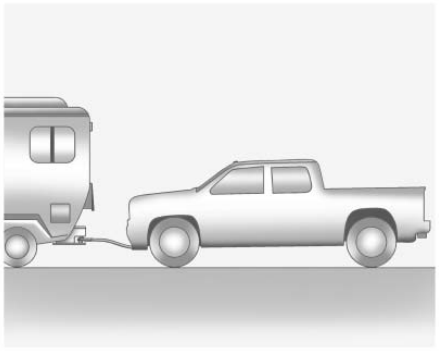


Notice: **If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged.**

The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dinghy tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle:

1. Position the vehicle being towed behind the tow vehicle and shift the transmission to P (Park).
2. Turn the engine off and firmly set the parking brake.
3. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the tow vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

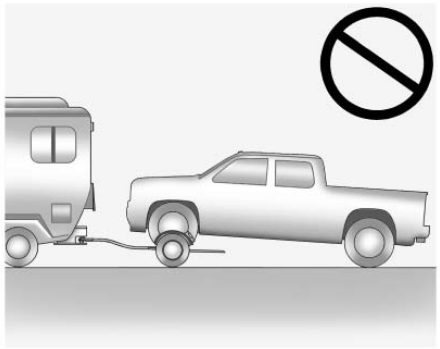
Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). The driver or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

4. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53* for the proper procedure to select the Neutral position for the vehicle.
5. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
6. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and remove the key — the steering wheel will still turn.

After towing, see “Shifting Out of Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53* for the proper procedure to take the vehicle out of the Neutral position.

Dolly Towing

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



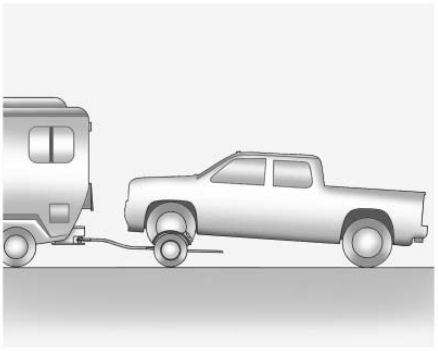
Notice: **If a two-wheel-drive vehicle is towed with the rear wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with the rear wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

To dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels on the dolly. See “Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)” later in this section for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle from the front:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the dolly.
3. Shift the transmission to P (Park).
4. Firmly set the parking brake.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). The driver or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

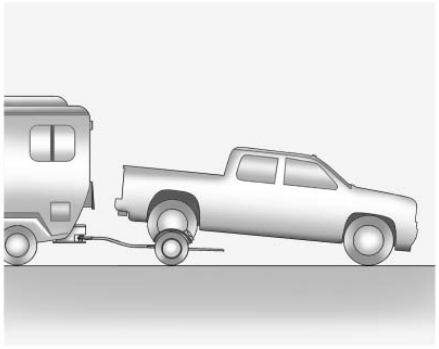
5. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
6. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
7. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53* for the proper procedure to select the neutral position for the vehicle.
8. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
9. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

After towing, see “Shifting Out of Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.
4. Put the transmission in P (Park).
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-68*.
4. Put the transmission in P (Park).
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). The driver or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

7. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53* for the proper procedure to select the neutral position for the vehicle.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

After towing, see “Shifting Out of Neutral” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-53*.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*.

Washing the Vehicle

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on the vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on the vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on the vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 inches) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8 274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under “Washing the Vehicle”.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer.

If the vehicle has a basecoat/ clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/ clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, chrome polish may be used on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim

The vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **Using strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because they could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive a vehicle that has aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 20 000 km (12,000 miles) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Care

The vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on the upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from the upholstery. It is important to keep the upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. The vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to home furnishings may also transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

When cleaning the vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on the vehicle, could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on the vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in the vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Products that remove odors from the vehicle's upholstery and clean the vehicle's glass can be obtained from your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not clean the vehicle using:

- A knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- A stiff brush. It can cause damage to the vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Heavy pressure or aggressive rubbing with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage the interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers can leave residue that streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide. Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps.
- Too much cleaner that saturates the upholstery.
- Organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc. that can damage the vehicle's interior.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt.
A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats.
For any soil, always try to remove it first with plain water or club soda.
Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water can be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of the leather and are not recommended.

Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl and other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of the interior and are not recommended.

Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on the instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Floor Mats

⚠ WARNING

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 11-1

Scheduled Maintenance
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-8
Maintenance Replacement Parts 11-11

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 11-12

General Information

This maintenance section applies to vehicles with a gasoline engine. For diesel engine vehicles, see the maintenance schedule section in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the scheduled maintenance in this section. We recommend having your dealer perform these services. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions for better air quality.

Because of all the different ways people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. The vehicle might need more frequent checks and services. Please read the information under Scheduled Maintenance. To keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer.

The maintenance schedule is for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-23*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 9-7*.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-84*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ WARNING

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous. Some jobs can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment. If in doubt, see your dealer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-4*.

At your dealer, you can be certain that you will receive the highest level of service available. Your dealer has specially trained service technicians, uses genuine replacement parts, as well as, up-to-date tools and equipment to ensure fast and accurate diagnostics.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-11*. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer.

Rotation of New Tires

To maintain ride, handling, and performance of the vehicle, it is important that the first rotation service for new tires be performed. Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km/7,500 miles. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-71*.

Scheduled Maintenance

When the Change Engine Oil Soon Message Displays

Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*. *An Emission Control Service.*

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC), service is required for the vehicle as soon as possible, within the next 1 000 km/600 miles. If driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system might not indicate the need for vehicle service for more than a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service technicians who will perform this work and reset the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 miles since the last service. Reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*.

Every Engine Oil Change

- Change engine oil and filter. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7* and *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- Engine coolant level check. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-20*.
- Engine cooling system inspection. Visual inspection of hoses, pipes, fittings, and clamps and replacement, if needed.
- Windshield washer fluid level check. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-28*.
- Windshield wiper blade inspection for wear, cracking, or contamination and windshield and wiper blade cleaning, if contaminated. See *Exterior Care on page 10-106*. Worn or damaged wiper blade replacement. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-39*.
- Tire inflation pressures check. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*.
- Tire wear inspection. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71*.
- Rotate tires if necessary. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-71*.
- Fluids visual leak check (or every 12 months, whichever occurs first). A leak in any system must be repaired and the fluid level checked.
- Engine air cleaner filter inspection. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-18*.
- Brake system inspection (or every 12 months, whichever occurs first).
- For vehicles with Allison Transmission® only: At the first engine oil change only, replace external transmission filter.
- Steering and suspension inspection. Visual inspection for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

11-4 Service and Maintenance

- Lubricate the front suspension, steering linkage, and parking brake cable guides. Control arm ball joints on 2500/3500 series vehicles require lubrication but should not be lubricated unless their temperature is −12°C (10°F) or higher, or they could be damaged. Control arm ball joints on 1500 series vehicles are maintenance-free. Vehicles used under severe commercial operating conditions require lubrication on a regular basis every 5 000 km/3,000 miles.
- Body hinges and latches, key lock cylinders, folding seat hardware, and tailgate hinges, linkage, and handle pivot points lubrication. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8*. More frequent lubrication may be required when the vehicle is exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth makes them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
- Restraint system component check. See *Safety System Check on page 3-29*.
- Fuel system inspection for damage or leaks.
- Exhaust system and nearby heat shields inspection for loose or damaged components.
- Vehicles with diesel engine or GVWR above 4 536 kg (10,000 lbs) only: Shields inspection for damage or looseness. Adjust or replace as required. This is a Noise Emission Control Service. Applicable to vehicles sold in the United States and recommended for vehicles sold in Canada.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Required Services

At the First 160 km/100 Miles, 1 600 km/1,000 Miles, and 10 000 km/6,000 Miles

- For vehicles with dual wheels: Check dual wheel nut torque. For proper torque, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Every 12 000 km/7,500 Miles

- Rotate tires. Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km/ 7,500 miles. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-71*.

At Each Fuel Stop

- Engine oil level check. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
- Engine coolant level check. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-20*.
- Windshield washer fluid level check. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-28*.

Once a Month

- Tire inflation pressures check. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-63*.
- Tire wear inspection. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-71*.
- Sunroof track and seal inspection, if equipped. See *Sunroof (Extended Cab) on page 2-22* or *Sunroof (Crew Cab) on page 2-23*.

Once a Year

- See *Starter Switch Check on page 10-37*.
- See *Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check on page 10-38*.
- See *Ignition Transmission Lock Check on page 10-38*.
- See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check on page 10-39*.
- Accelerator pedal check for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Underbody flushing service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

First Engine Oil Change After Every 40 000 km/25,000 Miles

- Four-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (extreme duty service) for vehicles mainly driven off-road in four-wheel drive. Vehicles used for farming, mining, forestry, Department of Natural Resources (DNR), and snow plowing occupations meet this definition. Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

First Engine Oil Change After Every 80 000 km/50,000 Miles

- Engine air cleaner filter replacement. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-18*.
- Automatic transmission fluid change (severe service) for vehicles with Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) over 3 901 kg (8,600 lbs) or mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid (4-Speed Transmission) on page 10-11* or *Automatic Transmission Fluid (6-Speed Transmission) on page 10-14*.
- Four-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service. Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Evaporative control system inspection. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve, if the vehicle has one, works properly. Replace as needed. *An Emission Control Service. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

First Engine Oil Change After Every 160 000 km/100,000 Miles

- Automatic transmission fluid change (normal service). See *Automatic Transmission Fluid (4-Speed Transmission) on page 10-11* or *Automatic Transmission Fluid (6-Speed Transmission) on page 10-14*.
- Four-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (normal service). Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.
- Spark plug replacement and spark plug wires inspection. *An Emission Control Service.*

First Engine Oil Change After Every 240 000 km/150,000 Miles

- Engine cooling system drain, flush, and refill (or every five years, whichever occurs first). See *Engine Coolant on page 10-20*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- Engine drive belts inspection for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage (or every 10 years, whichever occurs first). Replace, if needed.
- Manual transmission fluid change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

This maintenance section applies to vehicles with a gasoline engine. If the vehicle has a diesel engine and/or an Allison Transmission, see the maintenance schedule section in the Duramax Diesel Supplement.

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-20*.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12377967, in Canada 89021320).
Hydraulic Clutch System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12377967, in Canada 89021320).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Manual Transmission	Synchromesh Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12345349, in Canada 10953465).
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Floor Shift Linkage	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2 Category LB or GC-LB.
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Front Axle (1500 Series) - Four-Wheel Drive	SAE 80W-90 Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021671, in Canada 89021672).
Front Axle (1500, 2500 HD, and 3500 HD Series)	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021677, in Canada 89021678).
Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 89021677, in Canada 89021678).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

11-10 Service and Maintenance

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Transfer Case (Four-Wheel Drive)	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Front Axle Propshaft Spline or One-Piece Propshaft Spline (Two-Wheel Drive with 4-Speed Auto. Trans.)	Spline Lubricant, Special Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12345879, in Canada 10953511).
Rear Driveline Center Spline	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Tailgate Handle Pivot Points, Hinges, Latch Bolt, and Linkage	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

If your vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
Standard Filter	15908916*	A3086C*
High Capacity Filter	15908915	A3085C
Oil Filter		
4.3L V6	25010792	PF47
4.8L V8; 5.3L V8; 6.0L V8; 6.2L V8	89017524	PF48
Spark Plugs		
4.3L V6	12568387	41-101
4.8L V8; 5.3L V8; 6.0L V8; 6.2L V8	12621258	41-110
Wiper Blades – 55.0 cm (21.6 in)	25877402	—
*15908915 (A3085C) high-capacity air cleaner filter may be substituted.		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

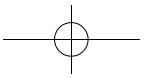
Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

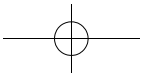
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



11-14 Service and Maintenance

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Service Parts Identification Label 12-1

Vehicle Data
Capacities and Specifications 12-2
Engine Drive Belt Routing . . . 12-6

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label, on the inside of the glove box, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-8* for more information.

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System		
4.3L V6 1500 Series	15.6 L	16.5 qt
4.8L V8 1500 Series	16.0 L	16.9 qt
5.3L V8 1500 Series	16.0 L	16.9 qt
6.0L V8 2500 Series and 3500 Series	15.5 L	16.4 qt
6.2L V8 1500 Series	15.9 L	16.8 qt

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Engine Oil with Filter		
4.3L V6	4.3 L	4.5 qt
4.8L V8; 5.3L V8; 6.0L V8; 6.2L V8	5.7 L	6.0 qt
Fuel Tank		
1500 Series Standard and Short Box	98.4 L	26.0 gal
1500 Series Long Box	128.7 L	34.0 gal
2500 Series Standard Box	136.3 L	36.0 gal
2500 Series and 3500 Series Long Box	136.3 L	36.0 gal
3500 Series Chassis Cab	240.4 L	63.5 gal
3500 Chassis Cab – Front Tank	89.0 L	23.5 gal
3500 Chassis Cab – Rear Tank (if equipped)	151.4 L	40.0 gal
Transfer Case Fluid	1.5 L	1.6 qt

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

12-4 Technical Data

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Transmission Fluid - Automatic (Pan Removal and Filter Replacement)		
4-Speed Transmission 4L60-E Electronic Transmission	4.7 L	5.0 qt
6-Speed Transmission 6L80-E	5.7 L	6.0 qt
6-Speed Transmission 6L90-E	6.0 L	6.3 qt
6-Speed Transmission Allison	7.0 L	7.4 qt
Transmission Fluid - Manual (Drain and Refill)		
1500 Series	4.4 L	4.6 qt
3500 Series	3.5 L	3.7 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	190 N•m	140 ft lb
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

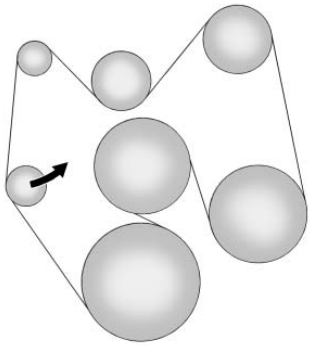
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Specifications

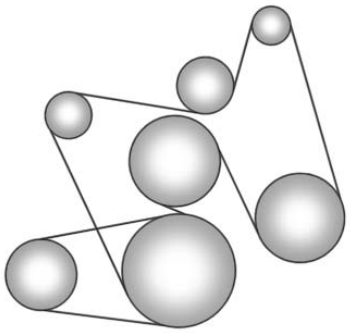
Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
4.3L V6 (LU3)	X	Automatic	1.52 mm (0.060 in)
4.8L V8 (L20)	A	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)
5.3L V8 FlexFuel with Active Fuel Management™ (Iron Block) (LMG)	0	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)
5.3L V8 FlexFuel with Active Fuel Management™(Aluminum Block) (LC9)	3	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)
6.0L V8 (Iron Block)	B	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)
6.0L V8 (Iron Block) (L96)	G	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)
6.2L V8 FlexFuel (Aluminum Block) (L9H)	2	Automatic	1.02 mm (0.040 in)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Drive Belt Routing



V6 Engines



V8 Engines

If the vehicle has a diesel engine, see the Duramax diesel supplement for more information.

If the vehicle is a hybrid, see the hybrid supplement for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Information

Customer Information
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (United States and Canada) 13-1
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico) 13-3
Customer Assistance Offices (United States and Canada) 13-4
Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) 13-5
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 13-6
Online Owner Center 13-6
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (United States and Canada) 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) 13-9
Scheduling Service Appointments 13-9
Courtesy Transportation Program 13-10
Collision Damage Repair . . . 13-11
Service Publications Ordering Information 13-14

Reporting Safety Defects
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 13-15
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 13-16
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 13-16

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-16
Event Data Recorders 13-17
OnStar® 13-18
Navigation System 13-18
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-18
Radio Frequency Statement 13-18

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (United States and Canada)

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by the dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

13-2 Customer Information

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the U.S., call the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-222-1020. In Canada, call General Motors of Canada Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-3777 (English), or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Chevrolet, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line® Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
www.dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners: In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/Arbitration Program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write to:

The Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico)

GM Garantía PLUS

Did you get the Warranty Extension Plan? This plan is recommended by General Motors to supplement the warranty included with your new vehicle purchase.

See your dealer for details.

Customer Assistance Procedure

Owner satisfaction and goodwill are very important to your dealer and General Motors.

Normally, any problem with the transaction, sale, or usage of your vehicle must be handled by your dealer sales or service departments.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

However, we recognize that despite the good intentions of all parties involved, sometimes a misunderstanding may occur.

If you have a problem that has not been satisfactorily handled through the normal means, we suggest the following steps:

Step One

Explain your case to the dealer service agent, service manager, dealer sales agent, or sales manager, depending on your case.

Make sure that they have all necessary information. They are interested in your continual satisfaction.

Step Two

If you are not satisfied, please contact the general manager or the dealership owner to ask for their help. If they are not able to resolve your case, ask them to contact the right people at General Motors for support, if needed.

Step Three

If your case is not resolved in a reasonable amount of time by your dealer, please call the General Motors Customer Assistance Center (CAC) and provide the following information:

- Name
- Address
- Phone number
- Model year
- Brand
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Mileage
- Delivery date
- Description of the problem
- Dealership name
- Dealership address

See *Customer Assistance Offices (United States and Canada) on page 13-4* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5* for more information.

Customer Assistance Offices (United States and Canada)

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to:

United States

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170
www.Chevrolet.com

1-800-222-1020
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone Devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-243-8872

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

From Puerto Rico:

1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre,
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.gm.ca

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-268-6800

Overseas

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America, and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands)

General Motors de Mexico,
S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Av. Ejercito Nacional #843
Col. Granada
C.P. 11520, Mexico, D.F.

01-800-466-0800
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0800

Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico)

To contact the Customer Assistance Center (CAC), use the phone numbers listed in this section. Customer assistance is available Monday through Friday, 08:00 to 20:00 hours, and Saturdays from 08:00 to 15:00 hours.

All e-mail inquiries to the Customer Assistance Center (CAC) should be sent to: cac.chevrolet@gm.com.

Mexico

From Mexico City

5329-0811

From Other Mexico Locations

01-800-466-0811

United States and Canada

1-866-466-8190

Costa Rica

00-800-052-1005

Guatemala

1-800-999-5252

Panama

00-800-052-0001

Dominican Republic

1-888-751-5301

El Salvador

800-6273

Honduras

800-0122-6101

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user in the U.S. can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-2438. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

Online Owner Center

Chevrolet Owner Center (U.S.) — www.chevyownercenter.com

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more
- Store online service and maintenance records
- Chevrolet dealer locator for service nationwide
- Exclusive privileges and offers
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle
- OnStar and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries

Other Helpful Links

Chevrolet — www.chevrolet.com

Chevrolet Merchandise — www.chevymall.com

Help Center — www.chevrolet.com/pages/mds/helpcenter/faq.do

- FAQ
- Contact Us

My GM Canada (Canada) — www.gm.ca

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of www.gm.ca where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM dealers.
- My Driveway: Access quick links to parts and service estimates, check trade-in values, or schedule a service appointment by adding the vehicles you own to your driveway profile.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gm.ca.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

For more information on the limited offer, visit www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Assistance Program (United States and Canada)

For U.S.-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-243-8872; (Text Telephone (TTY): 1-888-889-2438)**.

For Canadian-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/160 000 km (100,000 miles), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Chevrolet dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel Delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. There is a limit of six requests per year. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Must be over 250 kilometers from where your trip was started to qualify. General Motors of Canada Limited requires pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help to make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico)

Roadside Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 365 days of the year.

For detailed information about Roadside Assistance, please see the brochure provided with your new vehicle or visit our website at: www.chevrolet.com.mx. Navigate the site and click on “Asistencia en el Camino.” E-mail correspondence should be sent to: asistencia.chevrolet@gm.com.

To contact Roadside Assistance by phone, use the following numbers:

Mexico

01-800-466-0800

United States

1-866-466-8901

Canada

1-800-268-6800

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Courtesy Transportation Program

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and/or hybrid-specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Dealers may provide shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of the dealer's area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to ensure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Assistance Program on page 13-7*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver's name, address, and telephone number
- Driver's license number
- Owner's name, address, and telephone number
- Vehicle license plate number
- Vehicle make, model, and model year
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Insurance company and policy number
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? on page 3-37*.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if your vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Current and Past Models

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE:
1-800-551-4123 Monday - Friday
8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-222-1020, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

In Canada, call 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash, and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar®

If your vehicle is equipped with an active OnStar system, that system may also record data in crash or near crash-like situations. The OnStar Terms and Conditions provides information on data collection and use and is available in the OnStar glove box kit, at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada), or by pressing the button and speaking to an advisor.

Navigation System

If the vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that comply with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A

Accessories and Modifications 10-3
Accessory Power 9-35
Active Fuel Management™ 9-41
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-123
Adding a Snow Plow or Similar Equipment 9-123
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-48
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 9-32
Adjustments
Lumbar, Front Seats 3-7
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 10-18
Air Vents 8-11
Airbag
Light On-Off 5-23
Airbag System
Check 3-50
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-37
Passenger Sensing System 3-42
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-36
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 3-37
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-34
Where Are the Airbags? 3-33
Airbags
Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 3-48
On-Off Light 5-23
On-Off Switch 3-39
Passenger Status Indicator 5-25
Readiness Light 5-22
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 3-48
System Check 3-31
Alarm System
Anti-Theft 2-12
AM-FM Radio 7-8
Antenna
Satellite Radio 7-14
Anti-Theft
Alarm System 2-12
Alarm System Messages 5-50
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-67
Warning Light 5-30
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-106
Interior 10-111
Armrest Storage 4-1
Ashtrays 5-12
Assistance Program, Roadside 13-7, 13-9
Audio Players 7-14
CD 7-14
CD/DVD 7-21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

i-2 INDEX

Audio System
  Fixed Mast Antenna 7-14
  Radio Reception 7-13
  Rear Seat (RSA) 7-47
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2
Automatic
  Door Locks 2-9
  Headlamp System 6-4
Automatic Transmission 9-43
  Fluid 10-11, 10-14
  Manual Mode 9-47
Automatic Transmission
  Shift Lock Control
  Function Check 10-38
Auxiliary
  Roof Mounted Lamp 6-7
Auxiliary Devices 7-33
Axle, Front 10-34
Axle, Rear 10-35

B

Battery 10-32
  Jump Starting 10-96
  Load Management 6-9
  Power Protection 6-10
  Voltage and Charging
    Messages 5-43
Blade Replacement,
  Wiper 10-39
Bluetooth 7-49
Brake
  Pedal and Adjustable
    Throttle 9-32
Brakes 10-29
  Antilock 9-67
  Assist 9-69
  Fluid 10-30
  Parking 9-68
  System Messages 5-44
Braking 9-3
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-32
Bulb Replacement 10-46
  Center High-Mounted
    Stoplamp (CHMSL) and
    Cargo Lamp 10-45
  Fog Lamps 6-6
  Halogen Bulbs 10-43
  Headlamp Aiming 10-40
  Headlamps 10-43
  License Plate Lamps 10-46
  Pickup-Box Identification
    and Fender Marker
    Lamps 10-44
  Taillamps 10-44
  Taillamps, Turn Signal,
    Stoplamps, and
    Back-Up Lamps 10-45
Buying New Tires 10-75

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C

Calibration 5-6
California
Fuel Requirements 9-84
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements 10-3
Warning 10-3
Camera, Rear Vision 9-78
Canadian Vehicle Owners iii
Capacities and
Specifications 12-2
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 9-42
Tailgate 2-11
Winter Driving 9-20
Cargo Lamp 6-8
Cautions, Danger, and
Warnings iv
CD
DVD Player 7-21
CD Player 7-14
Center Console Storage 4-2
Center High-Mounted
Stoplamp (CHMSL) and
Cargo Lamp 10-45
Center Seat 3-5
Chains, Tire 10-81
Charging System Light 5-26
Check
Engine Light 5-27
Ignition
Transmission Lock 10-38
Child Restraints
Infants and Young
Children 3-53
Lower Anchors and
Tethers for Children 3-59
Older Children 3-51
Securing 3-68, 3-71
Systems 3-55
Where to Put the
Restraint 3-57
Cigarette Lighter 5-11
Circuit Breakers 10-48
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-106
Interior Care 10-111
Climate Control
Systems 8-1, 8-4
Dual Automatic 8-5
Clock 5-8
Cluster, IP 5-13
Clutch, Hydraulic 10-17
Collision Damage Repair 13-11
Compass 5-6
Control of a Vehicle 9-3
Convex Mirrors 2-15
Coolant
Engine 10-20
Engine Temperature
Gauge 5-19
Cooling System 10-19
Engine Messages 5-46
Courtesy Transportation
Program 13-10

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control 9-73
Light 5-34
Cupholders 4-1
Customer Assistance
Offices 13-4, 13-5
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 13-6
Customer Information
Service Publications Ordering Information 13-14
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1, 13-3

D

Damage Repair, Collision 13-11
Danger, Warnings, and Cautions iv
Data Recorders, Event 13-17
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-4
Defensive Driving 9-2
Delayed Locking 2-9
Devices, Auxiliary 7-33
Dome Lamps 6-8
Door
Ajar Messages 5-45
Delayed Locking 2-9
Locks 2-8
Power Locks 2-8
Rear Doors 2-10
Driver Information Center (DIC) 5-34
Driving
Characteristics and Towing Tips 9-90
Defensive 9-2
Drunk 9-2
Highway Hypnosis 9-19
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-19
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-22
Loss of Control 9-6
Off-Road 9-7
Off-Road Recovery 9-5
Vehicle Load Limits 9-23
Winter 9-20
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-34
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 8-5
Dual Tire Rotation 10-73
DVD
Rear Seat Entertainment System 7-38
DVD/CD Player 7-21

E

E85 Fuel 9-86
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 9-123
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-48
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-48
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-52
Overload 10-47

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 10-18
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 5-27
Compartment Overview 10-6
Coolant 10-20
Coolant Heater 9-37
Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-19
Cooling System 10-19
Cooling System Messages 5-46
Drive Belt Routing 12-6
Exhaust 9-42
Fan 10-26
Oil Pressure Gauge 5-18
Overheated Protection Operating Mode 10-26
Overheating 10-24
Power Messages 5-47
Pressure Light 5-32
Running While Parked 9-42
Starting 9-35
Engine Oil
Life System 10-9
Messages 5-47
Entry Lighting 6-9
Equipment, Towing 9-111
Event Data Recorders 13-17
Exit Lighting 6-9
Extender, Safety Belt 3-29
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-3

F

Fan
Engine 10-26
Fast Idle System 9-37
Features
Memory 1-13
Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 10-18
Flash-to-Pass 6-3
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-5
Flat Tire 10-81
Flat Tire, Changing 10-83
Floor Mats 10-114
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 10-11, 10-14
Brakes 10-30
Four-Wheel Drive Transfer Case 9-53
Power Steering 10-27
Washer 10-28
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 6-6
Folding Mirrors 2-17
Four-Wheel Drive 10-32, 9-53
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 5-31
Front Axle 10-34
Front Fog Lamps Light 5-33
Front Seats
Adjustment 3-3
Heated 3-11

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel 9-83
Additives 9-85
E85 (85% Ethanol) 9-86
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-89
Filling the Tank 9-88
Fuels in Foreign Countries 9-85
Gasoline Specifications 9-84
Gauge 5-17
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-33
Management, Active 9-41
Recommended 9-84
Requirements, California 9-84
System Messages 5-48
Fuel Economy
Driving for Better 1-34
Full-Size Spare Tire 10-95
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-48
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-48
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-52

G

Garage Door Opener 5-61
Programming 5-61
Gasoline
Specifications 9-84
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature 5-19
Engine Oil Pressure 5-18
Fuel 5-17
Odometer 5-16
Speedometer 5-16
Tachometer 5-17
Trip Odometer 5-16
Voltmeter 5-20
Warning Lights and Indicators 5-12
General Information
Service and Maintenance 11-1
Towing 9-90
Vehicle Care 10-3
Glass Replacement 10-40
Glove Box 4-1
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 13-7

H

Halogen Bulbs 10-43
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-5
Head Restraints 3-2
Headlamps 10-43
Aiming 10-40
Automatic 6-4
Bulb Replacement 10-43
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-4
Flash-to-Pass 6-3
High-Beam On Light 5-33
High/Low Beam Changer 6-3
Heated Front Seats 3-11
Heated Mirrors 2-18
Heater
Engine Coolant 9-37
High-Beam On Light 5-33
High-Speed Operation 10-65
Highway Hypnosis 9-19
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-19
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-70
Hood 10-5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Horn 5-5
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 3-17
Hydraulic Clutch 10-17

I

Idle System Fast 9-37
Ignition Positions 9-33
Ignition Transmission Lock Check 10-38
Immobilizer 2-14
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 3-53
Instrument Cluster 5-13
Instrument Panel Storage Area 4-1
Introduction . . . . . iii, 7-1

J

Jump Starting 10-96

K

Key and Lock Messages 5-48
Keyless Entry Remote (RKE) System 2-3
Keyless Entry System 2-3
Keys 2-2

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 10-56
Lamp Messages 5-48
Lamps
Auxiliary Roof Mounted Lamp 6-7
Cargo 6-8
Daytime Running (DRL) 6-4
Dome 6-8
Exterior Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-3
License Plate 10-46
Malfunction Indicator 5-27
Lamps (cont.)
Pick-Up Box Identification and Fender Marker 10-44
Reading 6-8
Taillamps 10-44
Lap Belt 3-28
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-23
LATCH System
Replacing Parts After a Crash 3-68
Latch, Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 3-59
Latches, Seatback 3-11
Lighter, Cigarette 5-11
Lighting
Entry 6-9
Exit 6-9
Illumination Control 6-7
Lights
Airbag On-Off 5-23
Airbag Readiness 5-22
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 5-30

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights (cont.)
Charging System 5-26
Cruise Control 5-34
Engine Oil Pressure 5-32
Flash-to-Pass 6-3
Four-Wheel-Drive 5-31
Front Fog Lamps 5-33
High-Beam On 5-33
High/Low Beam Changer 6-3
Low Fuel Warning 5-33
Safety Belt Reminders 5-21
Security 5-33
StabiliTrak® Indicator 5-31
Tire Pressure 5-32
Tow/Haul Mode 5-31
Locking Rear Axle 9-73
Locks
Automatic Door 2-9
Delayed Locking 2-9
Door 2-8
Lockout Protection 2-9
Power Door 2-8
Safety 2-9
Loss of Control 9-6
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-33
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH SYSTEM) 3-59
Lumbar Adjustment 3-7
Front Seats 3-7

M

Maintenance Records 11-12
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-8
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
Transfer Case Vent Filter 9-53
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-27
Manual Mirrors 2-16
Manual Mode 9-47
Manual Transmission 9-51
Fluid 10-17
Manual Windows 2-20
Memory Features 1-13
Messages
Airbag System 5-50
Anti-Theft Alarm System 5-50
Battery Voltage and Charging 5-43
Brake System 5-44
Door Ajar 5-45
Engine Cooling System 5-46
Engine Oil 5-47
Engine Power 5-47
Fuel System 5-48
Key and Lock 5-48
Lamp 5-48
Object Detection System 5-48
Ride Control System 5-49
Starting the Vehicle 5-50
Tire 5-51
Transmission 5-52
Vehicle 5-43
Vehicle Reminder 5-52
Washer Fluid 5-53

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-19
Convex 2-15
Folding 2-17
Heated 2-18
Manual 2-16
Manual Rearview 2-19
Park Tilt 2-19
Power 2-16
Trailer Tow 2-16
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 10-65

N

Navigation System
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-18
New Vehicle Break-In 9-32
Noise Control System 10-36

O

Object Detection System Messages 5-48
Odometer 5-16
Trip 5-16
Off-Road 9-7
Driving 9-7
Recovery 9-5
Oil
Engine 10-7
Engine Oil Life System 10-9
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge 5-18
Messages 5-47
Pressure Light 5-32
Older Children, Restraints 3-51
Online Owner Center 13-6
OnStar® System 1-35
Operation, Infotainment System 7-2
Outlets
Power 5-10
Overheated Engine Protection
Operating Mode 10-26
Overheating, Engine 10-24

P

Park
Shifting Into 9-38
Shifting Out of 9-40
Park Tilt Mirrors 2-19
Parking 9-41
Assist, Ultrasonic 9-76
Brake 9-68
Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-39
Over Things That Burn 9-41
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 5-25
Passenger Sensing System 3-42
Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California 10-3
Phone
Bluetooth 7-49

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 9-127
Pickup-Box Identification and Fender Marker Lamps 10-44
Power
Door Locks 2-8
Mirrors 2-16
Outlets 5-10
Protection, Battery 6-10
Retained Accessory (RAP) . . . 9-35
Seat Adjustment 3-5
Steering Fluid 10-27
Windows 2-20
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 3-28
Privacy
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-18
Program
Courtesy Transportation 13-10
Proposition 65 Warning, California 10-3

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-18
Statement 13-18
Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-8
CD/DVD Player 7-21
Reception 7-13
Satellite 7-10
Reading Lamps 6-8
Rear Axle 10-35
Locking 9-73
Rear Doors 2-10
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) System 7-47
Rear Seat Entertainment System 7-38
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 7-47
Rear Seats 3-12, 3-13
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-78
Rear Windows 2-21
Rearview Mirrors 2-19
Automatic Dimming 2-19
Reclining Seatbacks 3-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-8
Recommended Fuel 9-84
Records
Maintenance 11-12
Recreational Vehicle Towing 10-101
Reimbursement Program, GM Mobility 13-7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-3
Remote Vehicle Start 2-5
Replacement
Glass 10-40
Replacement Bulbs 10-46
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-50
Maintenance 11-11
Replacing Airbag System 3-50
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 3-68
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash 3-30

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 13-16
General Motors 13-16
U.S. Government 13-15
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 9-35
Ride Control Systems
Messages 5-49
Roadside Assistance
Program 13-7, 13-9
Roof
Sunroof 2-22, 2-23
Rotation, Tires 10-71
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 12-6
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 9-42

S

Safety Belts 3-14
Care 3-30
Extender 3-29
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 3-17
Lap Belt 3-28
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-23
Safety Belts (cont.)
Reminders 5-21
Replacing After a Crash 3-30
Use During Pregnancy 3-28
Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government 13-16
General Motors 13-16
U.S. Government 13-15
Safety Locks 2-9
Safety System Check 3-29
Satellite Radio 7-10
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
Scheduling Appointments 13-9
Seatback Latches 3-11
Seats
Adjustment, Front 3-3
Center Seat 3-5
Head Restraints 3-2
Heated Front 3-11
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 3-7
Power Adjustment, Front 3-5
Rear 3-12, 3-13
Reclining Seatbacks 3-9
Securing Child
Restraints 3-68, 3-71
Security
Light 5-33
Vehicle 2-12
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 10-3
Doing Your Own Work 10-4
Engine Soon Light 5-27
Maintenance Records 11-12
Maintenance, General
Information 11-1
Parts Identification Label 12-1
Publications Ordering
Information 13-14
Scheduling Appointments 13-9
Servicing the
Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-48
Shift Lock Control Function
Check, Automatic
Transmission 10-38

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting
Into Park 9-38
Out of Park 9-40
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 6-6
Snow Plow 9-123
Specifications and
Capacities 12-2
Speedometer 5-16
StabiliTrak® Indicator Light 5-31
StabiliTrak® System 9-70
Start Assist, Hills 9-70
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-5
Starter Switch Check 10-37
Starting the Engine 9-35
Starting the Vehicle
Messsages 5-50
Steering 9-4
Fluid, Power 10-27
Wheel Adjustment 5-2
Wheel Controls 5-3
Stoplamps and Back-Up Lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-45
Storage Areas
Armrest 4-1
Center Console 4-2
Glove Box 4-1
Instrument Panel 4-1
Stuck Vehicle 9-22
Sun Visors 2-22
Sunroof 2-22, 2-23
Switches
Airbag On-Off 3-39
Symbols iv
System
Noise Control 10-36

T

Tachometer 5-17
Tailgate 2-11
Taillamps 10-44
Bulb Replacement 10-45
Text Telephone (TTY)
Users 13-6
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-14
Immobilizer 2-14
Throttle, Adjustable 9-32
Time 5-8
Tires
Buying New Tires 10-75
Chains 10-81
Changing 10-83
Designations 10-59
Different Size 10-77
Dual Rotation 10-73
Full-Size Spare 10-95
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-81
Inflation Monitor System 10-67
Inspection 10-71
Messages 5-51
Pressure 10-65
Pressure Light 5-32
Pressure Monitor
System 10-65
Rotation 10-71
Sidewall Labeling 10-56
Terminology and
Definitions 10-60
Uniform Tire Quality
Grading 10-78

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires (cont.)
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-79
Wheel Replacement 10-80
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-74
Tow/Haul Mode 9-49
Tow/Haul Mode Light 5-31
Towing
Driving Characteristics 9-90
Equipment 9-111
General Information 9-90
Recreational Vehicle 10-101
Trailer 9-94
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 9-123
Vehicle 10-101
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 9-123
Tow Mirrors 2-16
Trailer Towing 9-94
Transfer Case
Vent Filter 9-53
Transmission
Automatic 9-43
Fluid, Automatic 10-11, 10-14
Fluid, Manual 10-17
Messages 5-52
Transportation Program, Courtesy 13-10
Trip Odometer 5-16
Truck-Camper Loading Information 9-30
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-6
Turn Signal
Bulb Replacement 10-45

U

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-76
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-78
Universal Remote System 5-61
Operation 5-66
Programming 5-61
Using this Manual iv

V

Vehicle
Canadian Owners iii
Control 9-3
Load Limits 9-23
Messages 5-43
Personalization 5-53
Remote Start 2-5
Security 2-12
Towing 10-101
Vehicle Care
Tire Pressure 10-63
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN) 12-1
Service Parts Identification Label 12-1
Vehicle Reminder
Messages 5-52
Vent Filter
Transfer Case 9-53
Ventilation, Air 8-11
Visors 2-22
Voltmeter Gauge 5-20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

W

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-12
Warnings iv
Cautions and Danger iv
Hazard Flashers 6-5
Washer Fluid 10-28
Washer Fluid Messages 5-53
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 10-79
Different Size 10-77
Replacement 10-80
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-74
Where to Put the Child Restraint 3-57
Windows 2-20
Manual 2-20
Power 2-20
Rear 2-21
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 5-5
Winter Driving 9-20
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-39

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine